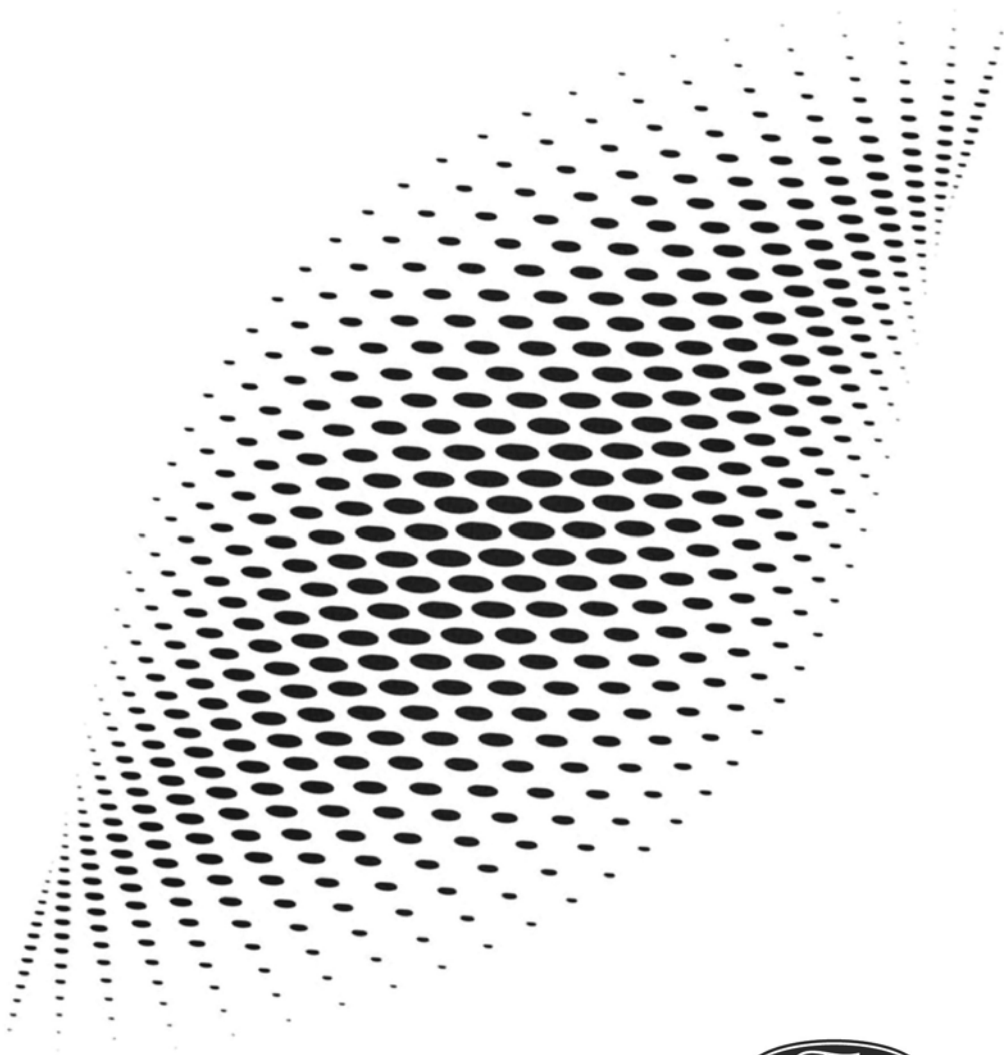


FORD **PUMA** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2026

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3980en-202507-20260212125750

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication - Europe	17
About This Publication - New Zealand	19
Using This Publication	21
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication	21
Special Notices - Turkey	22

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster	24
---	----

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	28
Service Data	29
Event Data	29
Settings Data	30
Connected Vehicle Data	30
Mobile Device Data	30
Emergency Call System Data	31

Environment

Protecting the Environment	32
Recycling and Disposing Labels	32
Recycling and Disposing of Batteries	32

Visual Search

Interior Overview - LHD	33
Interior Overview - RHD	34
Exterior Overview - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	36
Exterior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	37

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	38
Child Restraint Anchor Points	39
Child Restraints	40
Booster Seats	44

Child Safety Locks	45
--------------------------	----

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	46
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	46
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	47
Seatbelt Reminder	47
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting	48

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	49
How Do the Side Airbags Work	49
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	50
Airbag Precautions	50
Passenger Airbag Indicators	51
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	51
Airbags – Troubleshooting	51

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	52
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting	52

eCall

What Is eCall	53
How Does eCall Work	53
Emergency Call Requirements	53
Emergency Call Limitations	53
Manually Making an Emergency Call	53
Emergency Call Indicators	54
Changing the Backup Battery	55
eCall – Troubleshooting	55

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	56
----------------------------------	----

Table of Contents

Removing the Key Blade	56
Locating Your Vehicle	56
Changing the Remote Control Battery	56
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	58
Programming the Remote Control	58
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	58

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	59
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	61
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function	61
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor	62
Autounlock	62
Mislock	62
Autorelock	63
Door Lock Indicators	63
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	63
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	63

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	65
Keyless Entry Limitations	65
Keyless Entry Settings	65
Using Keyless Entry	65
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	66

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	67
Opening the Liftgate	67
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off	69
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height	69
Closing the Liftgate	70

Stopping the Liftgate Movement	72
Liftgate Obstacle Detection	72
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	73

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	75
Opening the Liftgate	75
Closing the Liftgate	76
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	76

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	77
Anti-Theft Alarm System	77
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	78
Security – Troubleshooting	79

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	80
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Built Up To: 25-05-2026	80
Locking the Steering Wheel - RHD	81
Locking the Steering Wheel - LHD	81
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	81
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle	82

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	83
Autowipers	83
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	84
Reverse Wipe	84
Checking the Wiper Blades	85
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	85
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	85
Washers	86

Table of Contents

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	87	Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors	105
Exterior Lighting		Glass Roof	
Exterior Lighting Control	88	Opening and Closing the Sunshade	106
Headlamps	88	Opening and Closing the Glass Roof	106
Autolamps	90	Venting the Glass Roof	106
Exterior Lamps	90	Glass Roof Bounce-Back	107
Automatic High Beam Control	91	Instrument Cluster	
Glare Free High Beam Control	94	Instrument Cluster Overview - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	108
Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions	96	Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	109
Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps		Tachometer	109
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	98	Power Gauge	109
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	98	Speedometer	110
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	98	Fuel Gauge	110
Interior Lamp Function	98	Vehicle Range Display	110
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	99	High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge	111
Ambient Lighting	99	Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	111
Windows		Electric Motor Temperature Gauge	111
Opening and Closing the Windows	100	What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	111
Global Opening and Closing	100	What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	111
Window Bounce-Back	101	Instrument Cluster Display	
Locking the Rear Window Controls	102	Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	112
Interior Mirror		Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	112
Interior Mirror Precautions	103	Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Battery Electric Vehicle	113
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	103	Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	113
Exterior Mirrors			
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	104		
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors	104		

Table of Contents

Customizing the Instrument Cluster	
Display - Battery Electric Vehicle	114
Fuel Economy Display	114
Battery Charge	114
Brake Coach	115
Trip Summary	115
Vehicle Charging Status	115

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language	116
Changing the Measurement Unit	116
Changing the Temperature Unit	116
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit	116

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	117
Accessing the Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle	117
Resetting the Trip Computer - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	117
Resetting the Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle	117
Resetting the Individual Trip Values	117
Configuring the Trip Computer	117
Trip Data - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	118
Trip Data - Battery Electric Vehicle	118

Remote Start

Using Remote Start - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	119
Using Remote Start - Battery Electric Vehicle	119
Enabling Remote Start	120
Remote Start Settings	120

Climate Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	122
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	122

Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	122
Switching Defrost On and Off	122
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	122
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	123
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	123
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	123
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	123
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	123
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	124
Setting the Temperature	124
Directing the Flow of Air	124
Auto Mode	124
Climate Control Hints - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	125
Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle	126

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	128
Sitting in the Correct Position	128
Manual Seats	129
Heated Seats	131

Rear Seats

Manual Seats	132
--------------------	-----

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	134
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	134
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	134
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	134

Table of Contents

Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	135
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	135
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	136

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	137
Playing Media Using the USB Port	137
Charging a Device	137

Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	139
Power Outlet Precautions	139
Locating the Power Outlets	139

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	140
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	140
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	140
Charging a Wireless Device	141

Storage

Cup Holders	142
Under Floor Storage	142

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	144
Push Button Ignition Switch	144
Starting the Engine	145
Stopping the Engine	145
Automatic Engine Stop	147
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	147
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	147

Starting and Powering Off

Starting and Powering Off Precautions	150
Starting the Vehicle	150
Powering Off	150
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off	151
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	151
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting	151

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information	152
---	-----

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	153
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	153
Auto-Start-Stop Settings	153
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	153
Stopping the Engine	153
Restarting the Engine	154
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	154
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	154
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	154

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	156
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	156
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off – ST	156
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off – Excluding: ST	156
Stopping the Engine	156
Restarting the Engine	156
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	158

Table of Contents

Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	158
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	158

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	160
Fuel Quality	160
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	161
Running Out of Fuel	161
Refueling	162
Fuel Tank Capacity	164
Fuel Consumption Regulations	165
Fuel Consumption Figures	165
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings	166
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	166

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter	167
Catalytic Converter Precautions	167
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting	167

Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter	168
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work	168
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions	168
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements	168
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	169

High Voltage Battery

What Is the High Voltage Battery	170
High Voltage Battery Precautions	170

Preserving Your High Voltage Battery	170
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	171
Energy Consumption Regulations	171
Energy Consumption Figures	172
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	172

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions	173
Charging Equipment Overview	174
Charging Equipment Indicators	177
Locating the Charge Port	180
Charge Port Indicators	181
AC Charging	182
DC Charging	189
Charge Coupler Manual Release	191
Charging Settings	192
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	196
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	196
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	197

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions	200
Shifting Into Reverse	200
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	200
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	200
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	200
Clutch Fluid Specification	201
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	201

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions	202
Automatic Transmission Positions	202

Table of Contents

Automatic Transmission Position Indicators	203	How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work	215
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters	204	Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level	215
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters	204	How Does Trip Summary Work	215
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	205	Viewing the Trip Summary	216
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	205	One Pedal Drive - Battery Electric Vehicle	
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	206	What is One Pedal Drive	217
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	206	One Pedal Drive Precautions	217
Electric Motor		One Pedal Drive Limitations	217
Electric Motor Precautions	207	Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off	217
Selector Positions	207	One Pedal Drive Indicators	217
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear	208	Brakes	
Selector Position Indicators	208	Brake Precautions	218
Electric Motor Audible Warnings	209	Anti-Lock Braking System	218
Roll-Away Protection	209	Brake Over Accelerator - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle	218
Electric Motor – Troubleshooting	211	Brake Over Accelerator - Battery Electric Vehicle	218
Drive Mode Control		Checking the Brake Fluid	218
What Is Drive Mode Control	213	Brake Fluid Specification	219
Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST	213	Brakes – Troubleshooting	220
Selecting a Drive Mode - Battery Electric Vehicle	213	Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle	
Selecting a Drive Mode - ST	213	Applying the Parking Brake	222
Drive Modes - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	213	Releasing the Parking Brake	222
Drive Modes - Battery Electric Vehicle	214	Parking Brake Audible Warning	222
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	214	Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	222
Eco Coach - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle		Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	
What Is Eco Coach	215	Applying the Parking Brake	223
How Does Eco Coach Work	215	Releasing the Parking Brake	223
		Parking Brake Audible Warning	223
		Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	223

Table of Contents

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	224
Applying the Electric Parking Brake	224
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	224
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	225
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	225
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	225
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	225

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist	228
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	228
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	228
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	229
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	229
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	229
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	230

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	232
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	232
Hill Start Assist Precautions	232
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission	232
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	232

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	233
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	233
Using Auto Hold	233
Auto Hold Indicators	233

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	234
How Does Traction Control Work	234
Switching Traction Control On and Off	234
Traction Control Indicator	234
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	234

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control	235
How Does Stability Control Work	235
Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST	236
Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST	236
Stability Control Indicator	236
Stability Control – Troubleshooting	236

Steering

Electric Power Steering	238
Steering – Troubleshooting	239

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	241
Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles With: 360 Degree Camera	241
Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles With: Digital Rear View Camera	242
Rear Parking Aid	242
Front Parking Aid	242
Parking Aid Indicators - Vehicles Without: Parking Aid Camera	244
Parking Aid Indicators - Vehicles With: 360 Degree Camera	244
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	245

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	246
Rear View Camera Precautions	246

Table of Contents

Rear View Camera Limitations	246	Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	259
Locating the Rear View Camera	246	Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	259
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	246	Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	260
Rear View Camera Settings	247	Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	260
360 Degree Camera		Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	260
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	250	Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	261
360 Degree Camera Precautions	250	Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	262
360 Degree Camera Limitations	250	Canceling the Set Speed	263
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	250	Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	263
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	250	Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	263
360 Degree Camera Settings	251	Overriding the Set Speed	265
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	251	Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	265
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle	252	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	265
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View	252	Lane Centering	265
		Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	270
Cruise Control		Predictive Speed Assist	272
What Is Cruise Control	253	Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting	275
Switching Cruise Control On and Off	253	Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	275
Setting the Cruise Control Speed	253		
Canceling the Set Speed	253		
Resuming the Set Speed	254		
Cruise Control Indicators	254		
Adaptive Cruise Control			
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work	255		
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	255		
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Gasoline	255		
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Battery Electric Vehicle	256		
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	257		

Table of Contents

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

What Is BlueCruise	276
How Does BlueCruise Work	276
BlueCruise Precautions	277
BlueCruise Requirements	278
BlueCruise Limitations	278
BlueCruise Settings	279
Switching BlueCruise On and Off	279
BlueCruise Alerts	280
BlueCruise Automatic Cancellation	280
BlueCruise Indicators	281
In-Lane Repositioning	282
BlueCruise – Information Messages	282

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information	284
Local Hazard Information Precautions	284
Enabling Local Hazard Information	284
Checking Local Hazard Information Status	284

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work	285
Speed Limiter Precautions	285
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off	285
Setting the Speed Limit	285
Changing the Set Speed Limit	285
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	285
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	285
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	286
Speed Limiter Indicators	286
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	286

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	287
--	-----

How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	287
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	287
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	287
Setting the Speed Limit	288
Changing the Set Speed Limit	288
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	288
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	288
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	288
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	288
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	289
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	289
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	289

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	290
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	290
Lane Keeping System Precautions	290
Lane Keeping System Limitations	290
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	291
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	291
Lane Keeping System Settings	291
Aid Mode	291
Alert and Aid Mode	292
Lane Keeping System Indicators	292
Blind Spot Assist	293
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	295
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	298

Table of Contents

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	299
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	299
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	299
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle	300
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	300
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle	300
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Battery Electric Vehicle	300
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission	301
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	301
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	301
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	302
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	303
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	303

Exit Warning

How Does Exit Warning Work	305
Exit Warning Precautions	305
Exit Warning Limitations	305
Exit Warning Indicators	306
Switching Exit Warning On and Off	306
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors	306
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting	306

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert	307
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	307
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	308
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	309
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	309
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	309
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	310
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	310

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	312
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	312
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work	312
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	313
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	313
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	313
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	314
Forward Collision Warning	315
Automatic Emergency Braking	315
Evasive Steering Assist	315
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	316

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	318
How Does Driver Alert Work	318
Driver Alert Precautions	318
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	319
Driver Alert Indicators	319
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	320

Table of Contents

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	321
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	321
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	321
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	321
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	322
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings	322

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	324
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	324
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	324
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	324
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	324
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	325

Load Carrying

Partitioning System	326
Load Carrying Precautions	326
Roof Rack	326
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier	327

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions	328
Opening the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle	328
Closing the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle	328
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover	329
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points	330

Connecting a Trailer

Tow Ball	331
Connecting a Trailer	334

Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting	335
--	-----

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions	336
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	336
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	336
Loading Your Trailer	337
Trailer Towing Hints	337
Towing Weights and Dimensions	337

Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions	340
Breaking-In - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	340
Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle	340
Driving Economically - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	340
Driving Through Shallow Water	341
Electric Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle	341
Floor Mats	342

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions	343
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	344
Jump Starting the Vehicle	344
Post-Crash Alert System	348
Post-Collision Braking	348
Automatic Crash Shutoff	349
Recovery Towing	349
Transporting the Vehicle	351
Fail-Safe Cooling	352

Table of Contents

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	354
Emergency Towing	354

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	356
Emergency Towing	356

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	357
Emergency Towing	357

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	358
Storing a First Aid Kit - Battery Electric Vehicle	358
Storing a Warning Triangle - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	358
Storing a Warning Triangle - Battery Electric Vehicle	358

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	359
Under Hood Fuse Box	359
Body Control Module Fuse Box	371
Identifying Fuse Types	374
Fuses – Troubleshooting	374

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	376
Opening and Closing the Hood	376
Under Hood Overview - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), LHD	377
Under Hood Overview - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), RHD	378
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, LHD	379

Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, RHD	379
Engine Oil	380
Engine Cooling Fan	381
Coolant - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	382
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle	385
12V Battery	389
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	393
Exterior Bulbs	395
Interior Bulbs	400
Changing the Illuminated Scuff Plate Battery	401

Vehicle Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost (92kW/125PS) (B7), Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	402
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost (114kW/155PS) (BZ)/1.0L EcoBoost (118kW/160PS) (Q0), Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	403
Vehicle Dimensions	404
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	405
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Battery Electric Vehicle	406

Track Use

Track Use Precautions	407
-----------------------------	-----

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	408
Cleaning the Interior	410
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	412
Waxing Your Vehicle	412

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	413
--	-----

Table of Contents

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle	414
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	415
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle	416

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label	417
Information on the Tire Sidewall	417
Glossary of Tire Terminology	420
Tire Replacement Requirements	421
Using Summer Tires	422
Using Winter Tires	422
Using Snow Chains	422

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	424
Inflating the Tires	424
Tire Pressure Specifications - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Excluding: ST	424
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Excluding: ST	426
Tire Pressure Specifications - ST	428
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	430
Tire Rotation	430

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	432
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	432
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)	432
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Battery Electric Vehicle	432
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built Up To: 07/2026	433
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built From: 08/2026	433

Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles Built Up To: 07/2026	434
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit - Vehicles Built From: 08/2026	438

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	442
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	442
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	442
Viewing the Tire Pressures	442
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	443
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting	443

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	445
Wheel Nuts	450

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	452
Vehicle Identification Plate	452

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	454
Connected Vehicle Requirements	454
Connected Vehicle Limitations	454
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	454
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	454
Connected Vehicle Settings	455
Connected Vehicle - Troubleshooting	455

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	457
--	-----

Table of Contents

Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	457
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	458
Audio System	
Audio System Precautions	459
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	459
Selecting the Audio Source	459
Media Control Buttons	459
Adjusting the Volume	459
Setting a Memory Preset	460
Muting the Audio	460
Scrolling Through Menu Items	460
Selecting a Menu Item	460
Adjusting the Sound Settings	460
Setting the Clock and Date	460
FM Radio	460
Switching the Display On and Off	461
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	461
Center Display Overview	
Center Display Precautions	463
Center Display Limitations	463
Status Bar	463
Information On Demand Screen	464
Rebooting the Center Display	464
Voice Interaction	
What is Voice Interaction	465
Setting the Wake Word	465
Beginning a Voice Interaction	465
Voice Interaction Examples	465
Alexa Built-In	
What is Alexa Built-In	466
Alexa Built-In Requirements	466
Signing In to Your Account	466
Using Alexa Built-In	466
Alexa Built-In Settings	466
Phone	
Phone Precautions	468
Connecting Your Phone	468
Phone Menu	468
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	469
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	470
Bluetooth®	
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	471
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	471
Apps	
App Precautions	472
App Requirements	472
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	472
Enabling Apps on an Android Device	472
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	472
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off	473
Navigation	
Connected Navigation	474
Accessing Navigation	474
Navigation Map Updates	474
Adjusting the Map	474
Setting a Destination	474
Waypoints	475
Route Guidance	475
Trailer Towing Navigation	476
Vehicle Software Updates	
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking	477
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking	477
Software Update Settings	478

Table of Contents

Software Update Indicators479

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset480

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Authorized Dealer Directory - Turkey
.....481

Service Intervals - Turkey

Service Intervals - Turkey487

Customer Information

Third Party Software Copyright
Acknowledgment488

Battery Performance and Durability
Information488

REACH489

Radio Frequency Certification Labels
.....489

Replacement Parts Recommendation
.....489

Mobile Communications Equipment
.....490

eCall User Information491

End User License Agreement494

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility520

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION - EUROPE



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Driver Assistance Systems

Your vehicle may contain certain Driver Assistance Systems (i.e., Pre-Collision Assist, Adaptive Cruise Control, Lane Keeping System, and BlueCruise). Use of these technologies still requires your complete attention while driving. Your hands need to be on the steering wheel at all times unless you are actively operating BlueCruise and your vehicle informs you that you do not need to have your hands on the steering wheel. With all driving technologies, your eyes need to be on the road, and you must be alert to your surroundings. Your complete attention is required while driving since you may need to take immediate control due to the presence of roadway hazards or a change in road, weather, or lighting conditions. Use of these features does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Always be prepared to manually control the speed and direction of your vehicle. Please refer to this manual for information pertaining to each Driver Assistance feature.

Aftermarket Modifications, Add-ons, Accessories, and Repairs

Unapproved modifications to your vehicle may affect your vehicle's height or suspension and could shift the sensors out of the position from which they were designed and tested. Unapproved aftermarket parts or add-on accessories could also block or interfere with your vehicle's sensors or electronic systems.

Do not modify your vehicle with unapproved aftermarket products or repairs. Unapproved modifications may affect your vehicle warranty, performance, safety, or durability. We are not responsible for any damage or adverse effects caused by unapproved modifications to your vehicle or its systems.

Introduction

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: *To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.*



Introduction

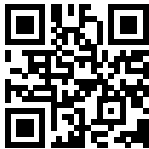
Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit <https://www.helminc.com> or see an authorized dealer.



In Europe, visit <https://www.z-order.eu> or see an authorized dealer.



For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION - NEW ZEALAND



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Driver Assistance Systems

Your vehicle may contain certain Driver Assistance Systems (for example Pre-Collision Assist, Adaptive Cruise Control, Lane Keeping System, and BlueCruise). Use of these technologies still requires your complete attention while driving. Your hands need to be on the steering wheel at all times unless you are actively operating BlueCruise and your vehicle informs you that you do not need to have your hands on the steering wheel.

Introduction

With all driving technologies, your eyes need to be on the road, and you must be alert to your surroundings. Your complete attention is required while driving since you may need to take immediate control due to the presence of roadway hazards or a change in road, weather, or lighting conditions. Use of these features does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Always be prepared to manually control the speed and direction of your vehicle. Please refer to this publication for information pertaining to each Driver Assistance feature.

Aftermarket Modifications, Add-ons, Accessories, and Repairs

Unapproved modifications to your vehicle may affect your vehicle's height or suspension and could shift the sensors out of the position from which they were designed and tested. Unapproved aftermarket parts or add-on accessories could also block or interfere with your vehicle's sensors or electronic systems.

Do not modify your vehicle with unapproved aftermarket products or repairs. Unapproved modifications may affect your vehicle warranty, performance, safety, or durability. We are not responsible for any damage or adverse effects caused by unapproved modifications to your vehicle or its systems.

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

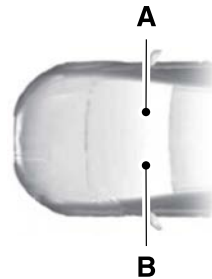
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

Introduction

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

If your vehicle is connected, you can find the latest version of the Owner's Manual through the Owner's Manual icon on the touchscreen. You can also scan the code displayed on the touchscreen with your smart device which leads you to the same version of the Owner's Manual online. This is the most up-to-date content and may vary slightly from any material originally provided with your vehicle.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.



Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit <https://www.helminc.com> or see an authorized dealer.



In Europe, visit <https://www.z-order.eu> or see an authorized dealer.



For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Introduction

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

- 1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights:
 - a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,
 - b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,
d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects, you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

Introduction

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Manufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr
www.ford.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Symbols Glossary

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Depending on your vehicle options, market, and instrument cluster type, not all symbols shown are available.

Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 88). See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 89).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 93). See

Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators (page 95).



Low beams. See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 88).



Rear fog lamps. See **Using the Rear Fog Lamps** (page 91).



Hazard warning. See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 344).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 90). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 344).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 90). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 344).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 89).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 89).

Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 220). See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 220). See **Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 222). See **Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 223). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 225).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 220).



Parking brake. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 220). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 225). See **Park (P)** (page 207).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 220). See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 220).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 233).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 233).

Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 86).

Engine



Check engine. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 147). See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 167). See **Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps** (page 169). See **Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators** (page 353). See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 385).

Symbols Glossary



Engine oil pressure. See **Engine Oil** (page 380).



Engine oil temperature. See **Engine Oil** (page 380).



Engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 380).



Change engine oil. See **Engine Oil** (page 380).



Engine coolant temperature. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 167).

See **Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators** (page 353). See **Coolant – Information Messages** (page 389). See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 385).



Auto Start/Stop. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 154). See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 158).



Auto Start/Stop off or unavailable. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 154). See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 158).



Eco mode. See **Eco** (page 213). See **Eco** (page 214).

Fuel



Fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps** (page 166).



Fuel and fuel filler door location. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Door** (page 110).

Transmission



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 147). See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 172).



Shift up. See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 200). See **Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 204).



Shift down. See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 200). See **Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 204).

Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - normal. See **Normal** (page 213). See **Normal** (page 214).



Selectable drive mode - ECO. See **Eco** (page 213). See **Eco** (page 214).



Selectable drive mode - sport. See **Sport** (page 213). See **Sport** (page 214). See **Sport** (page 214).



Selectable drive mode - slippery. See **Slippery** (page 213). See **Slippery** (page 214).



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Warning Lamps** (page 239).

Driver Assistance



Cruise control. See **Cruise Control Indicators** (page 254).

Symbols Glossary



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 265).



Adaptive cruise control failure. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 265).



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 217).



Lane keeping assist. See **Lane Keeping System Indicators** (page 292).



Hands on wheel. See **BlueCruise Indicators** (page 281).



BlueCruise. See **BlueCruise Indicators** (page 281).



Speed limiter. See **Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 286). See **Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 288).



Left curve. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 273).



Right curve. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 273).



Left intersection. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 273).



Right intersection. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 273).



Left roundabout. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 273).



Right roundabout. See **Predictive Speed Assist Indicators** (page 273).

Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 47).



Airbag. See **Airbags – Warning Lamps** (page 51).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 236).

See **Stability Control – Warning Lamps** (page 236). See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 234). See **Traction Control – Warning Lamps** (page 234). See **Post-Collision Braking** (page 348).



Stability control system off. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 236). See **Stability Control – Warning Lamps** (page 236).

See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 234). See **Traction Control – Warning Lamps** (page 234).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 442).

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 443).



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 316).



Reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist Indicators** (page 229).



Blind spot information system. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 303).

See **Exit Warning Indicators** (page 306).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps** (page 303).

Symbols Glossary



Cross traffic alert. See **Cross Traffic Alert Indicators** (page 310).



Icy road conditions. See **Cold Weather Precautions** (page 340).



Driver alert system. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 319).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 319).



Driver alert system 2.0 off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 319).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 63).

Security



Hood release/ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 63).



Trunk release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 73).
See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 76).

Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 167).
See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 393).



Propulsion battery. See **Battery** (page 114).



Propulsion battery charging. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 152).



Propulsion battery temperature. See **High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge** (page 111).



Propulsion battery - assisting. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 152).



Propulsion battery - boost. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 152).



Propulsion battery - boost disabled. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 152).



Electric motor temperature. See **Electric Motor Temperature Gauge** (page 111).



External cord connected. See **Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps** (page 197).



Ready to drive. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 150).

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Data Privacy

BlueCruise Data (If Equipped)

If BlueCruise is active in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, the system may record driver attentiveness, based on the direction of eyes and duration, and photographs of the driver seat area.

Note: *No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.*

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 454).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 472).

Data Privacy

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 480).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Accident direction.
- Change in velocity of the vehicle.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

Environment

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING LABELS

France Only



A déposer dans le réseau Ford agréé ou via le site www.valorauto.com.

Vous trouvez les informations sur le recyclage de votre Véhicule devenu Hors d'Usage via notre site: [Recyclage de votre voiture Ford : Comment ça marche ?](#) | Ford FR.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF BATTERIES



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

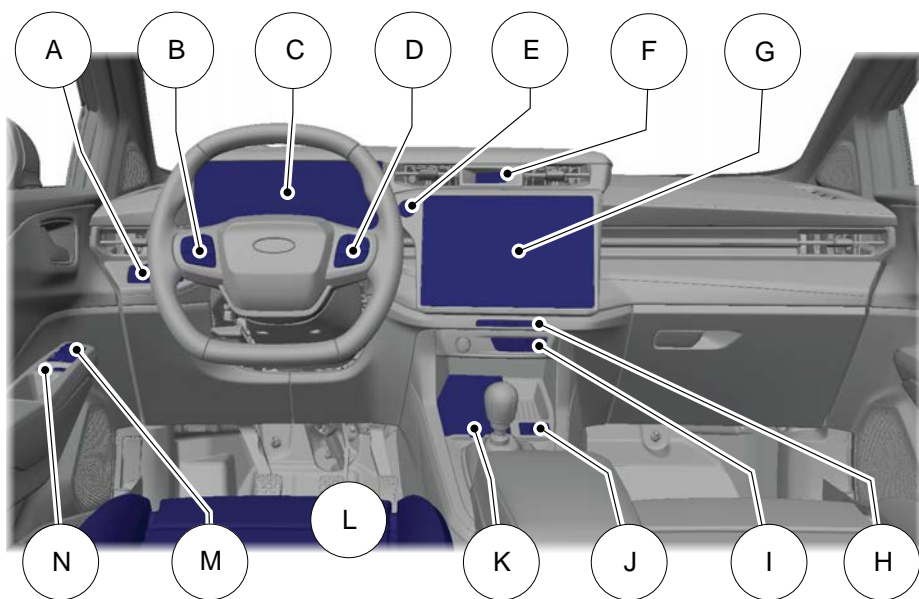
Batteries contain toxic metals such as cadmium, mercury and lead along with other hazardous materials like lithium, posing a significant environmental hazard if not disposed of properly.

Chemical symbols of metals concerned

Cd	Cadmium.
Pb	Lead.
Li	Lithium.
Li-Ion	Lithium-Ion.

Visual Search

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - LHD

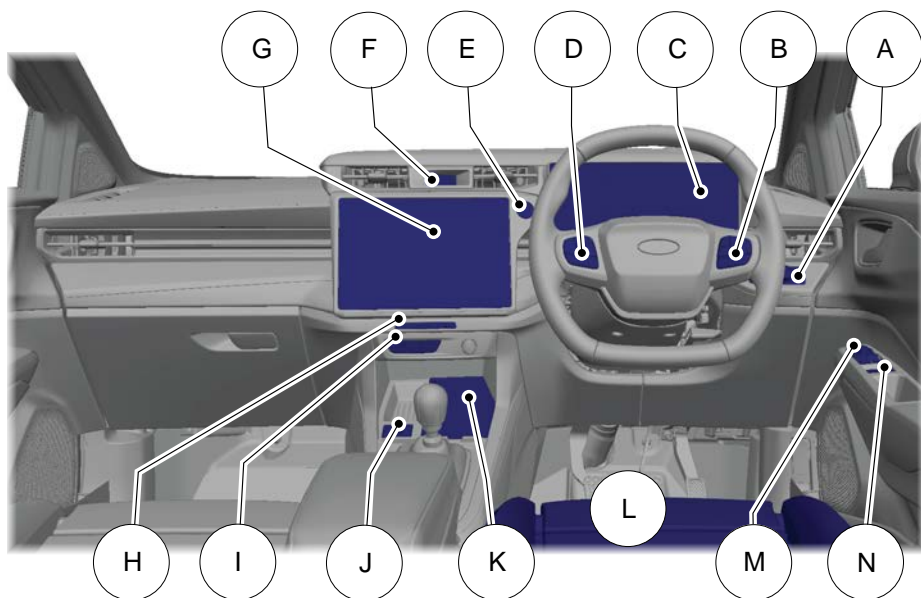


- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 88).
- B See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 259). See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 259). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 253).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 108).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).
- E See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 144).
- F See **What Is BlueCruise** (page 276). See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 318).
- G See **Center Display Precautions** (page 463).
- H See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 51).
- I See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 241). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 344). See **Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off** (page 122).

Visual Search

- J See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 139).
- K See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 141).
- L See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 128).
- M See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).
- N See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 100).

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - RHD



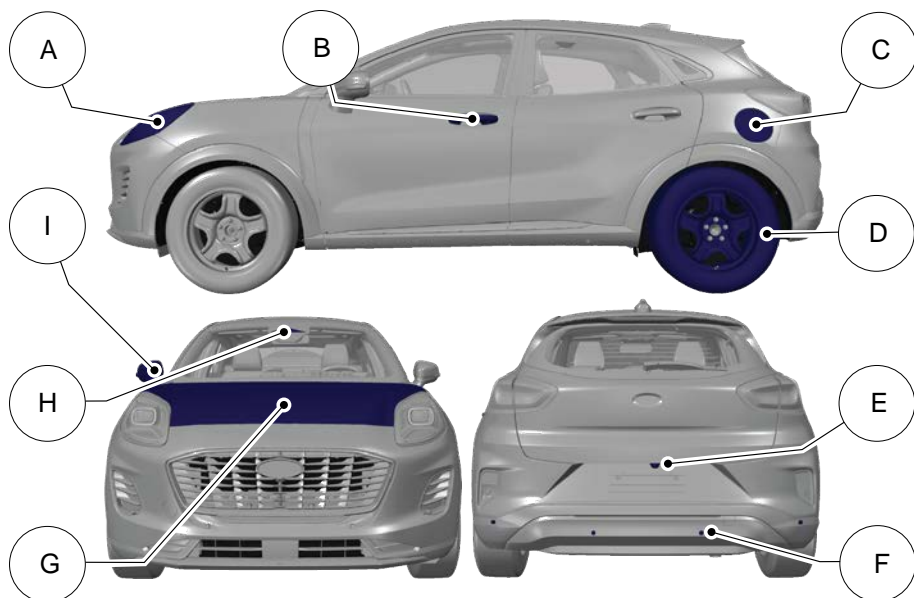
- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 88).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 108).
- D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 259). See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 259). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 253).

Visual Search

- E See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 144).
- F See **What Is BlueCruise** (page 276). See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 318).
- G See **Center Display Precautions** (page 463).
- H See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 51).
- I See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 241). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 344). See **Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off** (page 122).
- J See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 139).
- K See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 141).
- L See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 128).
- M See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).
- N See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 100).

Visual Search

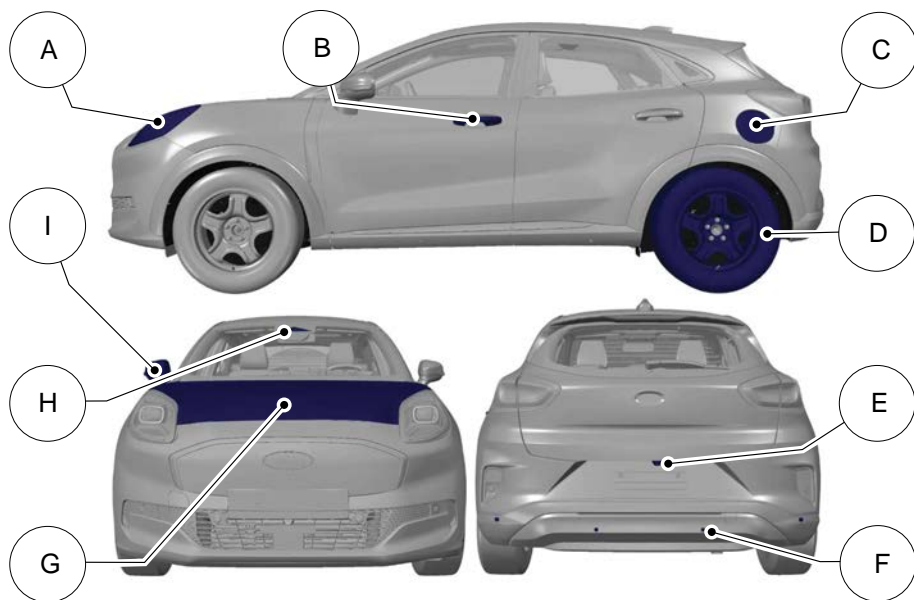
EXTERIOR OVERVIEW - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 88).
- B See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 59).
- C See **Fuel and Refueling Precautions** (page 160).
- D See **Viewing the Tire Pressures** (page 442).
- E See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 246).
- F See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 241).
- G See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 376).
- H See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 312).
- I See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).

Visual Search

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 88).
- B See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 59).
- C See **Locating the Charge Port** (page 180).
- D See **Viewing the Tire Pressures** (page 442).
- E See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 246).
- F See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 241).
- G See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 376).
- H See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 312).
- I See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 104).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: The passenger airbag must be deactivated when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: Following the removal of the child restraint, you must check the activation of the passenger airbag.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety



WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G ¹	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B ¹	C, D ¹
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ¹	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

¹The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

Child Safety

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹ The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Note: *No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.*

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base).
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KIDFIX OEM i-Size. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.

WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion

WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Seatbelts

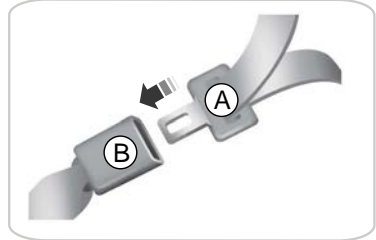
SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

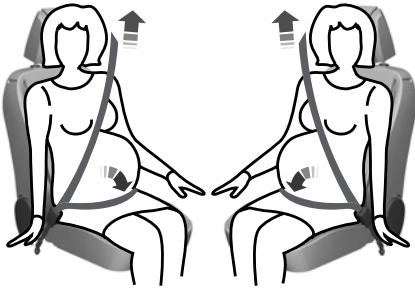
1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Seatbelts

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



A



C



B



D

- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

Seatbelts

2. Select **Status Information**.

3. Select **Seat Belts**.

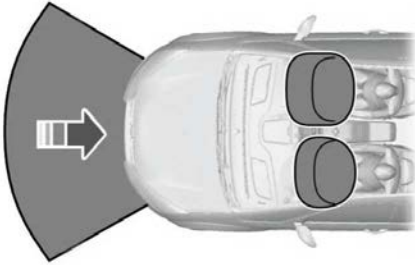
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

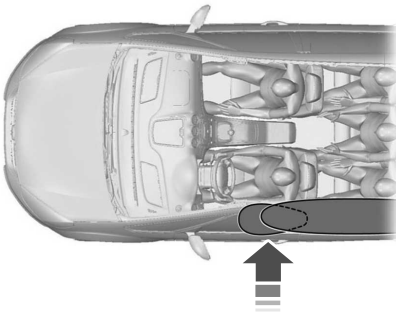
The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

Airbags

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Airbags



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are below the center display.

The passenger airbag indicator shows if the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled or disabled.

Note: When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



It illuminates when the airbag is on.



It illuminates when the airbag is off.



SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Passenger airbag**.
4. Switch **Passenger airbag** on or off.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely

quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Pedestrian Sounder malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 491).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to deactivate the high voltage battery, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 31).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

- Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

- Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

eCall

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

Keys and Remote Controls



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

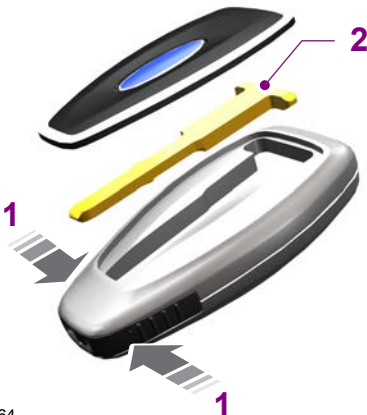


CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

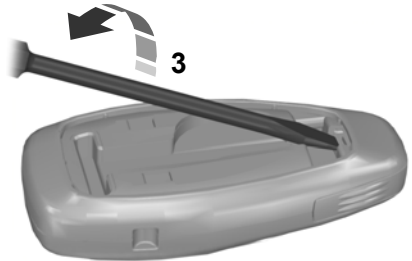
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



E105362

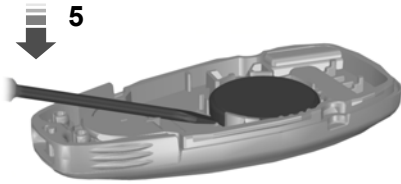
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

Keys and Remote Controls



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key Battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



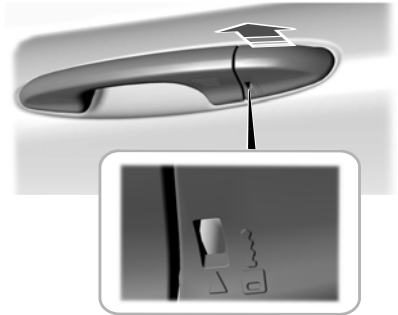
Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 65).

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Removing the Lock Cylinder Cap

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.



E243949

2. Fully insert the key blade into the key slot.
3. Gently pull the lock cylinder cap toward you to release it.
4. Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder.

Locking the Driver Door

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Unlocking the Driver Door

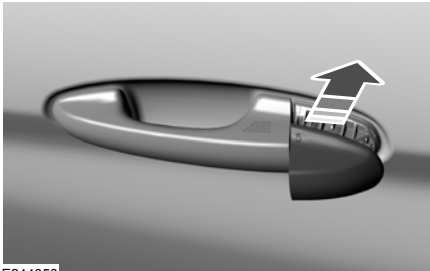
Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.

You can individually lock or unlock all other doors. See **Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 61).

Doors and Locks

Reinstalling the Lock Cylinder Cap



1. Place the cap over the lock cylinder.
2. Push the cap forward until it clicks into place. Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Before using double locking, check to make sure no one is inside the vehicle. Never activate double locking when an occupant is inside. Once double locking is activated, the doors cannot be opened or unlocked from the inside, which could prevent occupants from exiting the vehicle.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

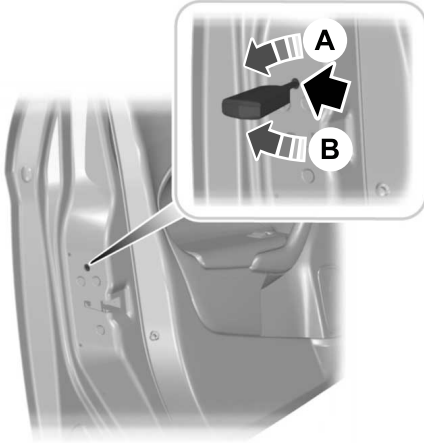
Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.

1. Remove the lock cylinder cap. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 59).
2. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.
3. Reinstall the lock cylinder cap.

Doors and Locks

INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the doors using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.*

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: *The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.*

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you press the unlock button once.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Doors and Locks

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Press a setting.

DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR

HOW DOES THE DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR WORK

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.

When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.

Note: *You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.*

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door using the interior door handle.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock only works if all the preconditions are met:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: *Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.*

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a feature that warns you when you try to lock your vehicle but it has not locked. The warning occurs with a double chirp from the horn.

Doors and Locks

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

A Mislock warning is performed if the following occurs:

- Any front door is open and you try to lock your vehicle once.
- Any door, the liftgate or the hood is open and you try to lock your vehicle twice within three seconds from the outside.

Note: *If any rear door, the liftgate or the hood is open and you try to lock your vehicle once, the direction indicators do not flash, but there is no warning chirp from the horn.*

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not warn you if your vehicle left behind unlocked.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

Autorelock is a feature that centrally locks all doors after an unintended unlock.

Autorelock Requirements

Autorelock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and locked.
2. The vehicle is unlocked with remote control or intelligent access (key free), if equipped.
3. No door is opened within 45 seconds.

Note: *Autorelock only relocks to central lock and alarm returns to its previous state.*

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

The LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open the passenger door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

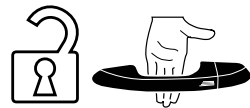
You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Select a setting.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor once to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Keyless Entry

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 65). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate switch on the touchscreen.

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Liftgate.

Note: Make sure that you shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or completely stop the vehicle for manual transmission.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

With the electric parking brake applied, access the liftgate switch on the touchscreen.

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Liftgate.

Note: Make sure that you apply the electric parking brake.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving.

Note: This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

Note: If an authorized device is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate control button.



E190028

2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

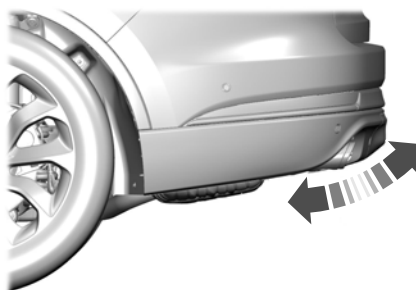
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

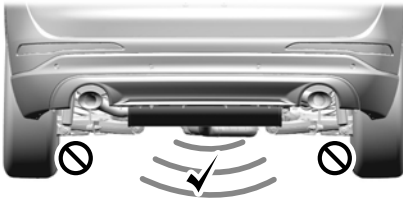
Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

Detection Zones

Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area.

SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Liftgate.
4. Select a setting.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

Note: The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

With the transmission in park (P), access the liftgate switch on the touchscreen.

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Liftgate.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

With the electric parking brake applied, access the liftgate switch on the touchscreen.

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Liftgate.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

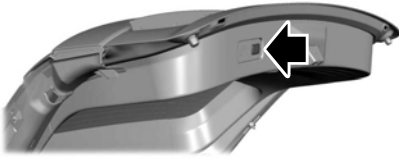
Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

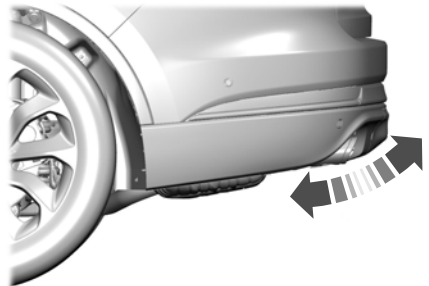
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the remote control within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

Detection Zones

Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

Note: Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

Note: Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the electric parking brake is applied, ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

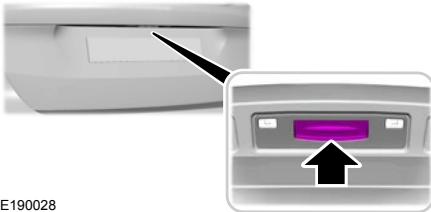
LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate releases from the latch and can be opened.



E190028

1. Press the remote control button twice to release the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Press the button once. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds during which time you can open the liftgate with control button.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A recessed grip or handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

Note: *If you set the cabin comfort level for your departure time with the alarm armed, the interior sensors deactivate for the duration of the cabin preconditioning to avoid a false alarm.*

Security

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is a standalone alarm sounder that has its own internal circuitry and a recharging battery which is charged when the engine is running. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system or if the battery backup sounder itself becomes unplugged from the vehicle's electrical harness. The alarm sounds from its own power source if that occurs.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting.

In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to motion sensors on once the power is turned on.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

Security

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Alarm Turn off motion sensors? Yes No	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

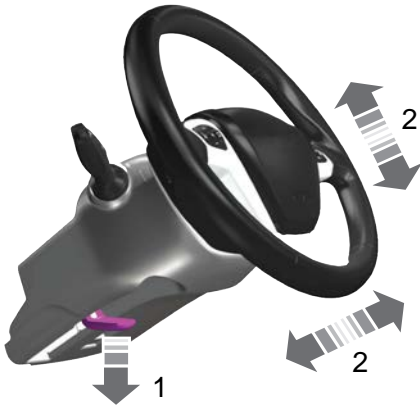
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 128).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 25-05-2026

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the vehicle is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, turn the vehicle on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Steering Wheel

Note: *Applicable to vehicles with steering wheel lock.*

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - RHD

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - LHD

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: *The vehicle must be running to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time you switched your vehicle off.*

Steering Wheel

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: *The vehicle must be on to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time you switched your vehicle off.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

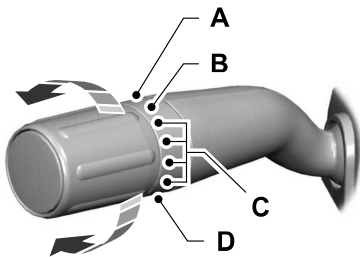
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 85). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 85). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 85).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



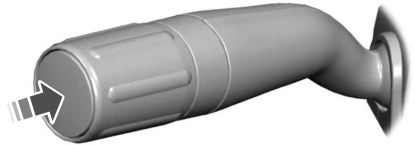
- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.

- C Intermittent wipe.
- D Off.



Use the rotary control.

One-wipe function



Push the button briefly to activate the one-wipe function.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.

Note: *Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.*

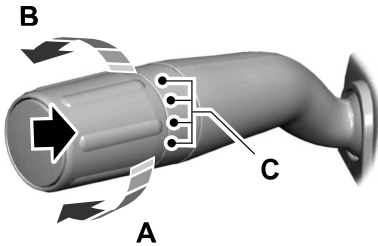
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. In this case if you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A Low sensitivity.
- B High sensitivity.
- C Intermittent wipe/Autowipers.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

Note: Use intermittent wipe positions to adjust the rain sensor sensitivity. See **Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off** (page 83).

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.

Rotate the control to adjust the wipe interval.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure.

1. Fully lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Press the wiper blade locking button.



3. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

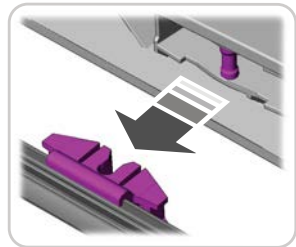
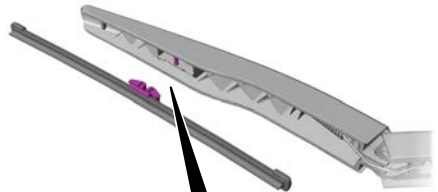
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

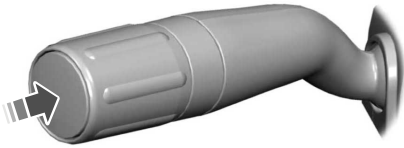
Wipers and Washers


WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



 Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

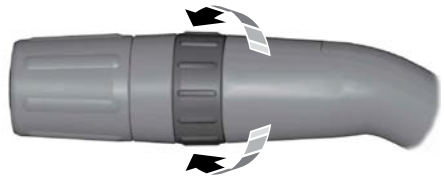
Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. When you switch it off the wipers finish the current washer request.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position and hold it to operate the rear window washer.

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 86).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

Wipers and Washers

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

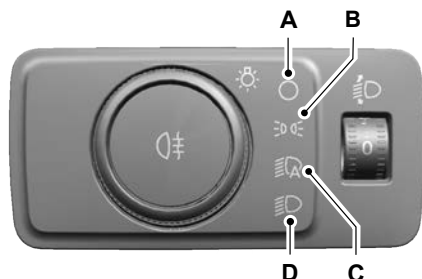
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 85). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 85). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 85).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

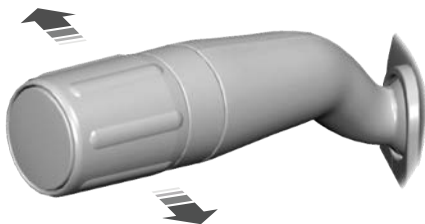
Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

Note: Rotate the lighting control twice to turn the lamps off if a display message appears in the instrument cluster.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

Exterior Lighting

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE LED HEADLAMPS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Exterior**.
5. Press **Adaptive Headlamps Setup**.
6. Select a setting.

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD - VEHICLES WITH: LED PROJECTOR HEADLAMPS

The headlamps are designed to support the left or right-hand side driving. You do not need to take any action.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING



WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.



WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.



Scroll the switch up or down to adjust the level of headlamps.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beams or the parking lamps on.

Exterior Lighting

Headlamp High Beam



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beams on.

Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the headlamp low beams are on, this indicates that a headlamp low beam has failed.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

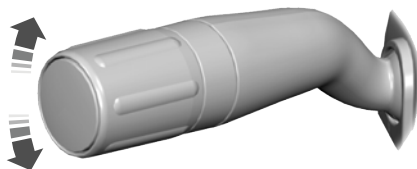
Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Exterior**.
5. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
6. Select a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

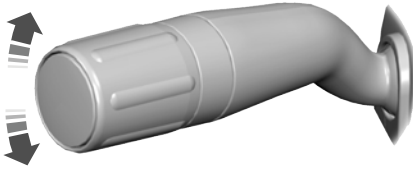
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.


Exterior Lighting

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.




2.  Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

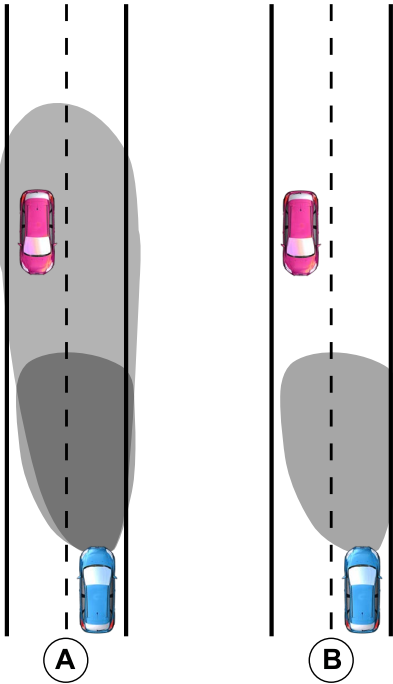
HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 455). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

Exterior Lighting



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

Exterior Lighting

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

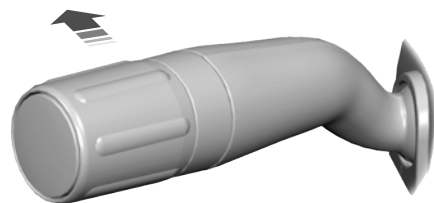
1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Exterior**.
5. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Windscreen camera Low visibility Clean wind-screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Windscreen camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Windscreen camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

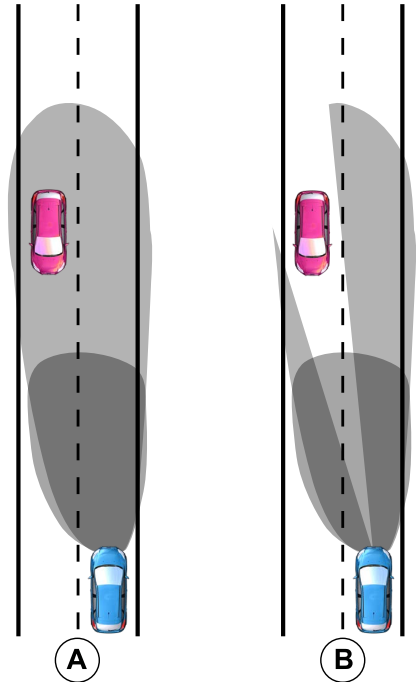
Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 455). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.



- A Without glare free high beam control.
- B With glare free high beam control.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Additionally, the system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Exterior**.
5. Switch **Glare-Free Lighting** on or off.

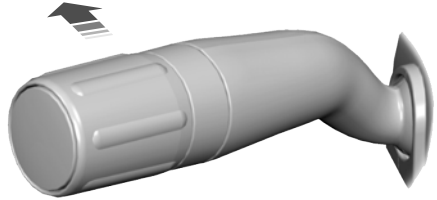
GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

Exterior Lighting

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Windscreen camera Low visibility Clean wind-screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Windscreen camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Windscreen camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the exterior lamps?

- Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a

possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

Exterior Lighting

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration or speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- Standing water or a water puddle inside the lamp. Condensation with drip marks present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

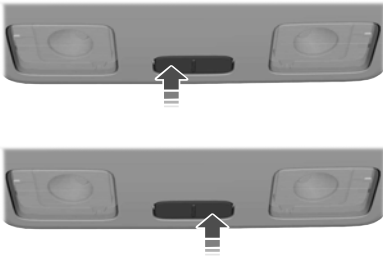
- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

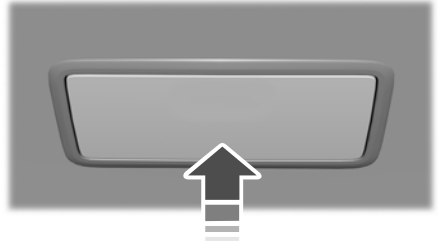


SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Note: Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the lens to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Interior**.
5. Press **Cockpit Illumination**.
6. Set your preferred setting.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: MULTI-COLOR AMBIENT LIGHTING

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ambient Lighting**.

Drag the slider above zero brightness to switch ambient lighting on.

Drag the slider to zero brightness to switch ambient lighting off.

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SINGLE-COLOR AMBIENT LIGHTING

1. Switch the ignition on.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the ambient light.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING - VEHICLES WITH: MULTI-COLOR AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the selected color up or down.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING - VEHICLES WITH: SINGLE-COLOR AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Lift again or press it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Windows

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

Note: *The moonroof stops in the vent position.*

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Open** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 101).*

Note: *Depending on the built date of your vehicle, this feature may not be available.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Close** on or off.

Note: *Depending on the built date of your vehicle, this feature may not be available.*

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Windows

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If the battery has been disconnected, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

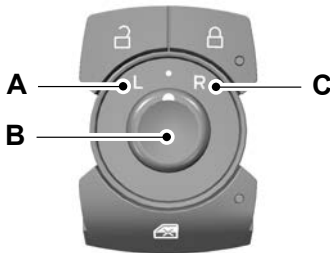
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror position.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors auto-fold on.



For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control switch again.

The left and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until a front door is opened.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on and off.

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the mirrors, fold or retract both mirrors by hand.

Exterior Mirrors

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Glass Roof

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE

The sunshade operates independently of the glass roof. Slide the sunshade backward or forward to open or close it.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE GLASS ROOF

Opening the Glass Roof



WARNING: Do not allow anyone to stand or place any portion of their body through the open glass roof while the vehicle is in motion. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the glass roof and could become trapped in a closing glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The glass roof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press the rear of the control all the way down to open the glass roof.

Closing the Glass Roof



WARNING: When closing the glass roof, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the glass roof immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The glass roof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press the front of the control all the way down to close the glass roof.

VENTING THE GLASS ROOF



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the rear of the control only half way down to vent the glass roof.

Press the front of the control to close the glass roof.

Glass Roof

GLASS ROOF BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS GLASS ROOF BOUNCE-BACK

The glass roof stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

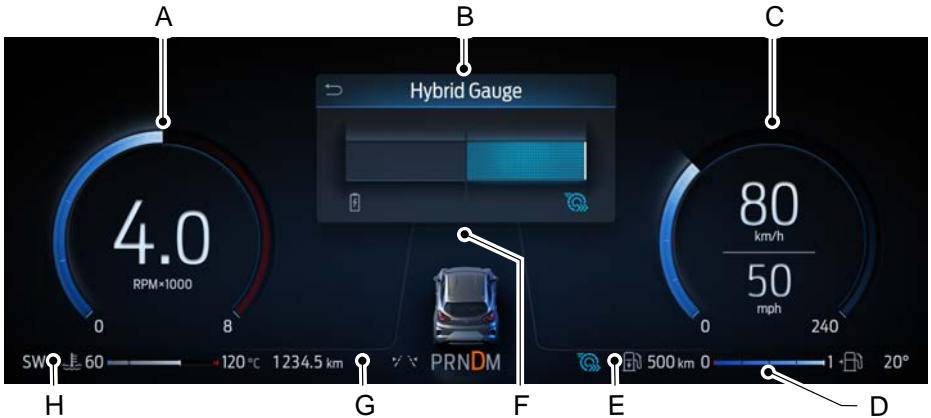
OVERRIDING GLASS ROOF BOUNCE-BACK



Press and hold the front of the control within a few seconds to override bounce-back.

Instrument Cluster

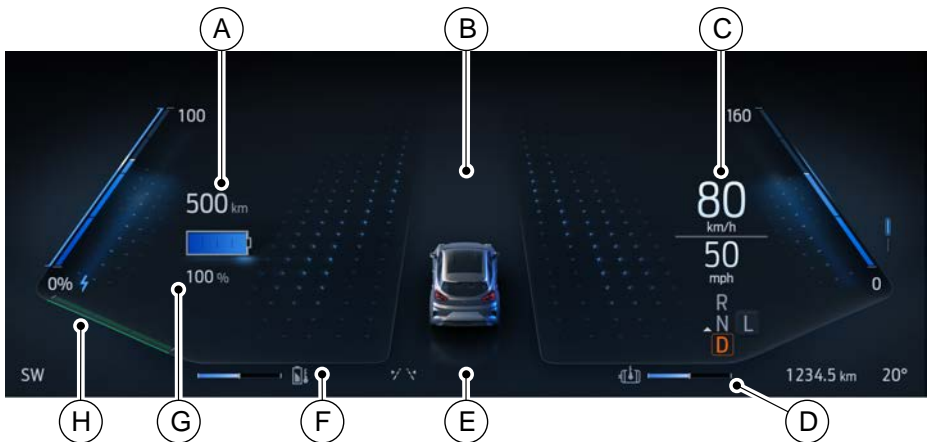
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



- A Tachometer.
- B Hybrid gauge.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Distance to empty.
- F Instrument cluster display.
- G Information bar.
- H Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A Vehicle driving range.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Electric motor temperature gauge.
- E Information bar.
- F High voltage battery temperature gauge.
- G Battery state of charge.
- H Power gauge.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the rotational speed of the engine to the driver at any given moment.

POWER GAUGE

The Power Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

Instrument Cluster

What is Power Availability Gauge

Displays total available vehicle power. Available power may be limited due to temperature or low battery state of charge. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 341).

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the speed of the vehicle to the driver at any given moment.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank.

Note: Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 152). See **Charging Settings** (page 192).

Instrument Cluster

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery temperature.

When the battery temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

ELECTRIC MOTOR TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Displays electric motor temperature.

When the electric motor temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

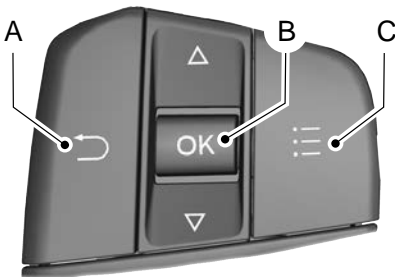
Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

Press to close an information screen. Press the button again or press the OK button to return to the previously displayed information screen.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Menu Button

Press to enter the instrument cluster display main menu. Use the toggle buttons to change the layout of the instrument cluster display.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items. Use the toggle buttons to change the layout of the instrument cluster display.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature or setting's activation status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance

Instrument Cluster Display

Menu Item
Trip Computer
Audio
Navigation
Phone
Settings

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Energy
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Navigation
Phone
Settings

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Choose a setting.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the battery.

Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Select **Hybrid Gauge**.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Calm Screen

Displays a simplified view that shows only essential driving information.

Press the toggle up or down button on the steering wheel to switch Calm Screen on or off. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: *The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.*

MyView
Battery Charge
Trailer Light Status
Navigation
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Eco Behavior
Tyre Pressure

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.*

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.

4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Calm Screen

Displays a simplified view that shows only essential driving information.

Press the toggle up or down button on the steering wheel to switch Calm Screen on or off. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

Enabling Economy Display

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Select **Fuel Economy**.
5. Press the **OK** button.

BATTERY CHARGE

Displays a high voltage battery gauge and an estimate of available electric driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge (plugging your vehicle in). See **Charging Your Vehicle** (page 173).

Instrument Cluster Display

BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears before your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 113).

TRIP SUMMARY

Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle or when you switch on your vehicle while being plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start time for scheduled charging or charge end time while charging. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen. See **Charging Your Vehicle** (page 173).

Personalized Settings

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Press a setting.

Note: *Available languages vary by region.*

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Trip/Fuel.
3. Select Trip Computer 1 or Trip Computer 2.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Trip/Energy.
3. Select Trip Computer 1 or Trip Computer 2.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Trip/Fuel.
3. Select Trip Computer 1 or Trip Computer 2.
4. Select Reset Individual Values.

5. Select Reset All Values.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to reset the Trip Computer.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Trip/Energy.
3. Select Trip Computer 1 or Trip Computer 2.
4. Select Reset Individual Values.
5. Select Reset All Values.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to reset the Trip Computer.

RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Trip Computer.
3. Select Trip Computer 1 or Trip Computer 2.
4. Select Reset Individual Values.
5. Select the value you want to reset.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to reset the Trip Computer.

CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Trip Computer

Trip Computer

3. Select Trip Computer 1 or Trip Computer 2.
4. Select Configure View.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to configure the Trip Computer.

TRIP DATA - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed since you last reset the value.
- Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the current fuel consumption.
- Climate Use – This includes energy used by your vehicle’s high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater.
- Route – This includes energy used to propel your vehicle based on your driving style and route. Your driving style includes how fast you drive and whether your acceleration and braking are mild or aggressive. Your route includes factors such as the amount of city or highway driving and road grades.
- Accessories – This includes energy used for low voltage accessories such as climate system fans, heated seats and lighting.
- Exterior Temperature – This includes energy losses due to outside temperature and other conditions which reduce vehicle system efficiency.

TRIP DATA - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Trip data includes distance, time and energy economy. Better energy economy, meaning greater efficiency or lower consumption, results in increased driving range.

Accessing Trip Data

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Trip Energy.

Where Did My Energy Go

Displays a breakdown of energy consumption for your trip.

Remote Start

USING REMOTE START - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

Follow the instructions in the Ford app to start and stop your vehicle.

Note: *The Ford app must be paired with your vehicle before using it to remotely start your vehicle.*

After remotely starting your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: *You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.*

USING REMOTE START - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

Follow the instructions in the vehicle app to start and stop your vehicle.

Note: *The vehicle app must be paired with your vehicle to remotely start using the app.*

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Remote Start

- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: *You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The electric parking brake is not applied.
- Your vehicle is already on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.*

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

Note: *To remote start with Ford app, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting the Ford App to the Modem** (page 454).*

REMOTE START SETTINGS

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: *If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).*

Note: *If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.

Remote Start

4. Press ***Duration***.
5. Press a setting.

Climate Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Climate Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch the electric heater on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system helps maximize your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system could not activate or could run with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

Climate Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 123).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Climate Control

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press **MAX A/C**.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



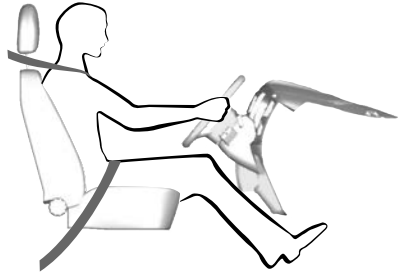
WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.

Front Seats

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.

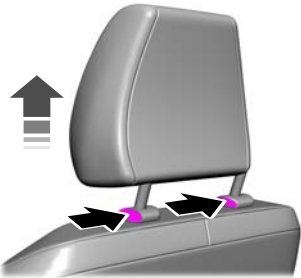
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E251772

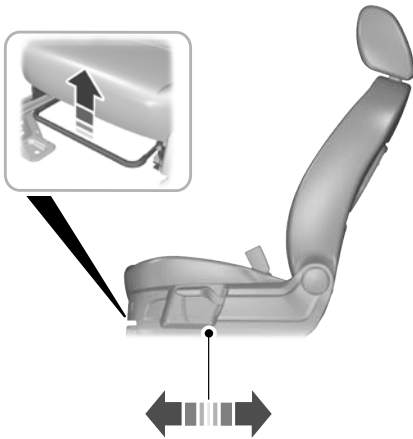
2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Lift and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

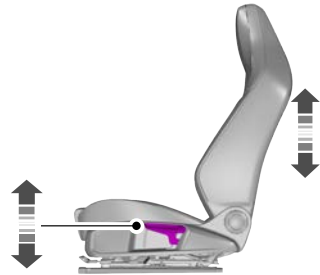


WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Front Seats



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT

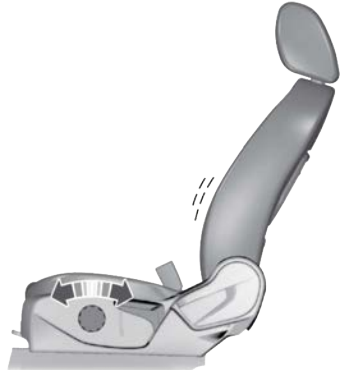
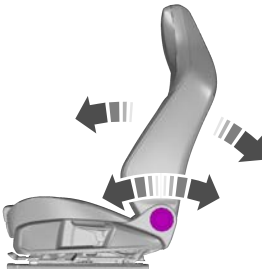


ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL LUMBAR

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



Front Seats

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The heated seat symbol is on the bottom left or right side of the touchscreen.

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Rear Seats

MANUAL SEATS

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

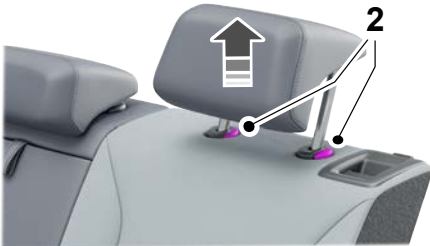


1. Press the button to push the head restraint down.
2. You can pull the head restraint up without pressing the button.

Note: The head restraint must engage securely into position.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



2. Push the head restraint all the way up.

3. Press and hold both release buttons to remove the head restraint.

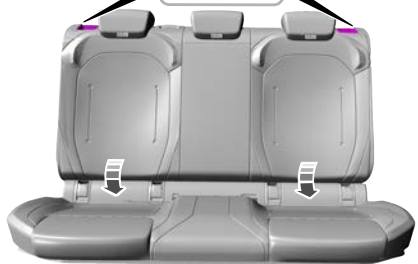
FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.



WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



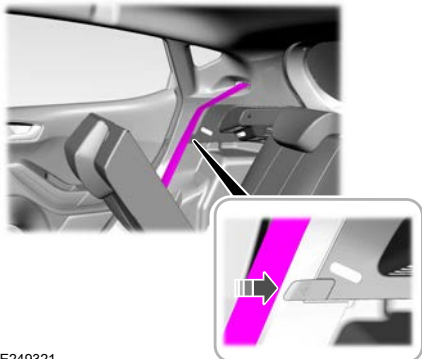
1. Push the head restraint all the way down.
2. Pull the release button and fold the rear seat backrest forward at the same time.

Note: The respective section of the rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see the red indicator.

3. Fold back the rear seat backrest and push it firmly into the catch until it engages securely into place.

Rear Seats

Note: The red indicator should no longer be visible.



E249321

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the outermost trim.

Note: Make sure that the seatbelt is fully tightened into the retractor.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest up to unfold it. Make sure the seat latch engages.

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Select **Alert & Horn** or **Alert Only** or **Off**.

Note: The default setting is **Alert Only**.

Note: If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Switch **Child Seat Installed** on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: The graphic may be different for your vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*


Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- On the rearview mirror bracket.
- Behind the first row seats.
- On the rear interior trim.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT

 **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

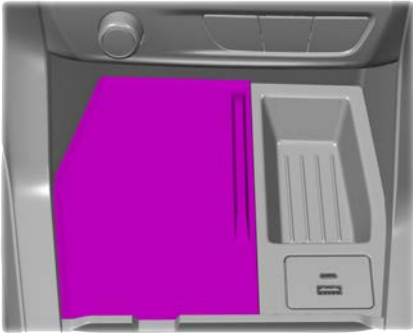
Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console.

Wireless Accessory Charger



Note: *The use of streaming services and other applications while the device is charging can decrease charging efficiency.*

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

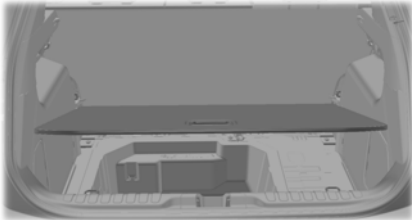
CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

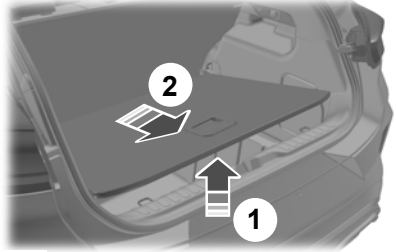
UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

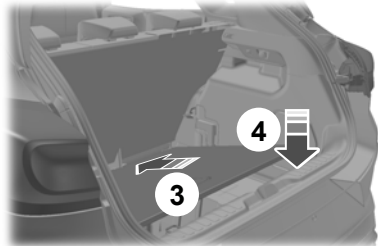


ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FLOOR

Lowering the Luggage Compartment Floor



1. Lift the luggage compartment floor.
2. Pull the luggage compartment floor rearward.



3. Push the luggage compartment floor toward the bottom of the rear seats.
4. Lower the luggage compartment floor.

Note: *The spring-loaded support pillars move into position.*

Storage

Raising or Restoring the Luggage Compartment Floor



1. Lift the luggage compartment floor.


Note: *The spring-loaded support pillars move into position.*





2. Move the luggage compartment floor onto the spring-loaded support pillars.
3. Lower the luggage compartment floor.


Starting and Stopping the Engine


STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.*

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



Starting and Stopping the Engine

4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **Reset** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



Place the passive key in the position shown. The buttons face the gearshift lever.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the engine speed high for a while after the engine starts?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

What should I do if the engine cranks but does not start?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

Vehicles with manual transmission

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Disabled starting system

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5.0 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 147).

Starting and Powering Off

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

READY When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: A valid key must be inside your vehicle to power the vehicle on.

Switching the Vehicle to Accessory Mode

When the vehicle is off, press the push button start once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.

POWERING OFF



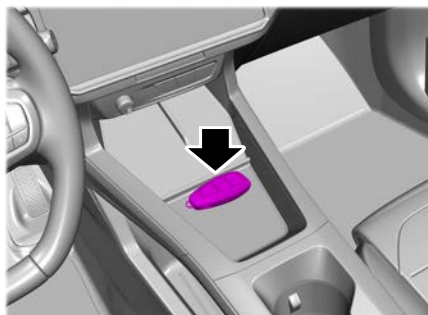
WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and press the push button start to restart your vehicle.

Starting and Powering Off

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).



RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open the driver's door for 2 seconds or longer while your vehicle is on and the selector is in park (P), you cannot shift out of park (P) if the system does not detect a valid remote control device.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.

1. Place the remote control in the instrument panel slot as shown.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 151).
- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle

Your vehicle has a 48 volt mild hybrid system.

It is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work

The system uses regenerative charging during engine braking.

It switches the engine off when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 153).

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics

Regenerative charging results in a greater degree of engine braking.

Engine braking further increases following a brake pedal press. This is normal.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system is charging the battery.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is assisting the powertrain in driving the vehicle.



Illuminates in the information display when the battery is providing a large amount of energy to the powertrain to support a higher rate of acceleration.



Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system cannot provide energy to the powertrain.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle - Information Messages

Message	Details
Stop safely now Exit vehicle in safe area	Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible, then seek roadside assistance.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. See **Setting the Engine Stop Speed** (page 153). The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

AUTO-START-STOP SETTINGS

SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rolling StartStop: Speed Threshold**.
4. Press a setting.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.

3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Select a gear.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Shift into neutral.
Auto StartStop Press Clutch to Start Engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Fully press the clutch pedal.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed of 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF - ST

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

With the vehicle in drive (D), press the brake pedal and slow the vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Shift into neutral.
Auto StartStop Press Clutch to Start Engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Fully press the clutch pedal.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The transmission is in manual (M) or Neutral (N).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch **MAX A/C** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- You select Neutral (N).

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?


No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.


Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?


Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.


Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)


FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

 **WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

 **WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

 **WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

 **WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.


Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.


- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

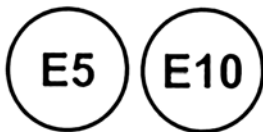
SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL

 **WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

 **WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).


Note: *We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.*

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL


FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER


 **WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.


Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

 **WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

 **WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 161).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

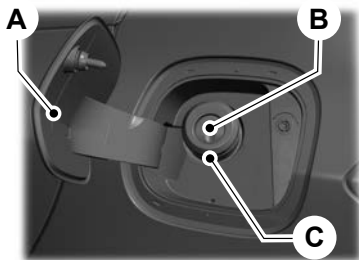
Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

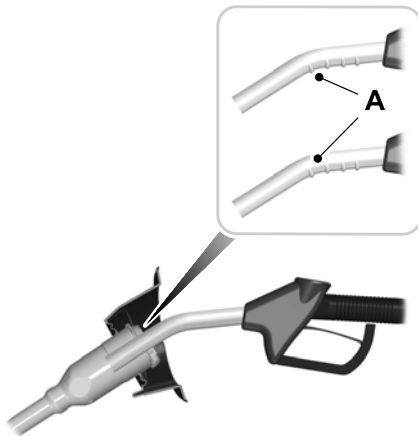
WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

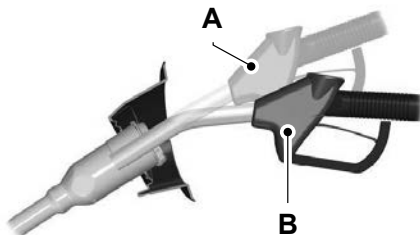
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

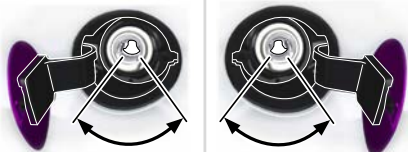


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

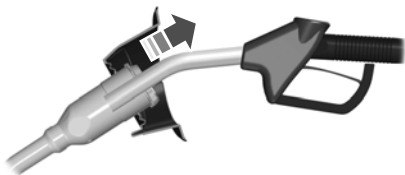


4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Capacity

Variant	Quantity
All.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test

procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.8–6.2 (36–46)	6.2–4.8 (46–59)	5.5–4.5 (51–63)	7–5.8 (40–49)	6.5–5.3 (43–53)	119–146

Fuel and Refueling - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 346).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 160).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate and a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed. However if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particulates that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist in regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional trips that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

Note: *The best gasoline particulate filter regeneration occurs following moderate acceleration or extended cruise, such as exiting the highway, with your foot off the accelerator and decelerating while in gear.*

Gasoline Particulate Filter

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust Filter at Limit Drive to Clean Now	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.• Avoid prolonged engine idling.• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a moderate speed.• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electric energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the Ford app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. We recommend to set your preferred charging times to start at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to be less than 100% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This warms or cools the cabin and also conditions the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. See **DC Charging** (page 189).

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 1°C (34°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

Plug in your vehicle when temperatures reach the freezing point to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

High Voltage Battery

Storage State of Charge

You can increase the battery life by maintaining your state of charge below 100%. When you park your vehicle for an extended period of 30 days or more, we recommend your battery to be at approximately 50% state of charge. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

Note: *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 192).*

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

ENERGY CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging)

The declared WLTP energy consumptions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

In accordance with the Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure (WLTP) the certified electric range can be achieved with a fully charged battery depending on the existing series and battery configuration. The actual electric range may vary due to various factors such as weather conditions, driving style, route profile, vehicle condition, age and condition of the lithium-ion battery.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO₂ emissions and electric range. CO₂ is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO₂ emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

High Voltage Battery

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Electric Range City	Electric Range	Electric Energy Consumption	Weighted, Combined CO ₂
km (mi)	km (mi)	kWh/100km (mi/kWh)	g/km
393 - 577 (244 - 359)	266 - 423 (165 - 263)	19.1 - 12.7 (3.2 - 4.9)	0

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.


HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Stop safely now Exit vehicle in safe area	Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible, then seek roadside assistance.


Charging Your Vehicle


CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.


 **WARNING:** Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.


 **WARNING:** Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

 **WARNING:** Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to the charging equipment or cause personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.

 **WARNING:** High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

Public Charge Cord

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located under the passenger seat or safely secured and clipped in the cargo area.



You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord** (page 186).

A charge wall box can be purchased separately as an accessory to utilize the public charge cord at home.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	Type 2
Voltage (PHEV)	230 V
Voltage (BEV)	230–400 V
Maximum Current (PHEV)	16 amps max continuous
Maximum Current (BEV)	32 amps max continuous (per phase)
Phases (PHEV)	1
Phases (BEV)	1-3
Frequency	50Hz

Specification Type	Specification Value
Power (PHEV)	3.5 kW max
Power (BEV)	Vehicle 11kW max, Public charge cord 22 kW max
Cable length	5–10 m (16–33 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

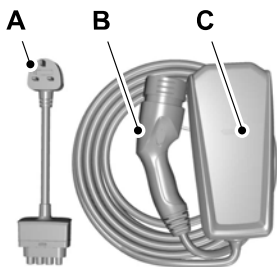
Note: Only vehicles with dual Charger are capable of 22kW charging, with 32A on each phase. Vehicles with a single Charger have max charging capability of 11kW, with 16A on each phase.

Universal Home Charge Cord (if Equipped)

You can charge your vehicle's high-voltage battery using a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord. See **Charging at Home** (page 182).

The universal home charge cord can be purchased separately as an accessory. It has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can also be purchased separately. Connector type varies by market.

Charging Your Vehicle



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control Box.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

Note: Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.

Note: We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

Note: Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.

Note: If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

Note: The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.

Note: Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.

Note: If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.

Note: Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	IEC
Voltage	230 V
Maximum Current	16 amps max continuous
Frequency	50Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	6.1 m (20 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)

Charging Your Vehicle

Specification Type	Specification Value
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging. Store the universal home charge cord in the storage bag supplied with the universal home charge cord when not in use.

Note: Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.

Note: To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

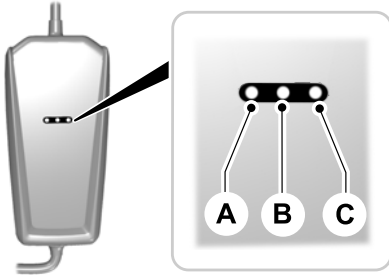
SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

- Service ground check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal event sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- GFCI protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.
- Insulation: The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.
- Unintentional disconnection: The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS (IF EQUIPPED)



- A Amber fault indicator
- B Blue status indicator
- C Red trouble indicator

Note: When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The vehicle is charging.

No action required.

Charging Your Vehicle

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the vehicle to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact your authorized dealer.

Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

Universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is limiting charging power due to overheating.

Charging Your Vehicle

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area.

Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINKING	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is reducing charging power due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under- or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINKING	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact your authorized dealer about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

Ground Leakage Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

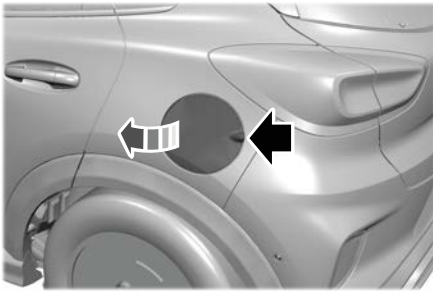
Note: When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if there is an equipment issue preventing charging. The unit is non-functional if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford app.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is on the rear-left side of your vehicle.

To open, pull the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.

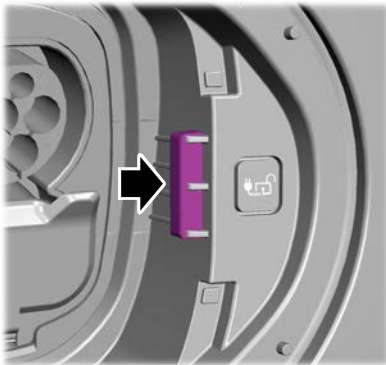
Charging Your Vehicle



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.



There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

- White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging or pressing the charge coupler unlock button.
- Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.
- Amber is used to indicate charge faults.

The charge status indicator displays the current state of charging:

- The indicator illuminates in pulsing blue, if the vehicle is actively charging.
- When the vehicle reached the target state of charge with the vehicle on, the indicator remains pulsing blue to indicate that the charge of the HV battery is preserved.
- When charging stops with the vehicle off, the charge status indicator illuminates solidly in blue color for 30 seconds before turning off.

Note: Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

Note: If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is on. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, you can turn it off under the charge port light settings inside the access menu on your touchscreen.



Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or electrical supply.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: If the system detects a fault inside the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the charge status indicator illuminates solidly in amber color for 30 seconds then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station, the charge status indicator flashes in amber color continuously for 30 seconds then turns off. If this happens check the charge station or electrical supply.

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME

Charging through a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord.

Universal home charge cords are optional equipments. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.



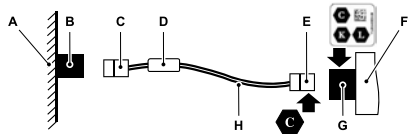
AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

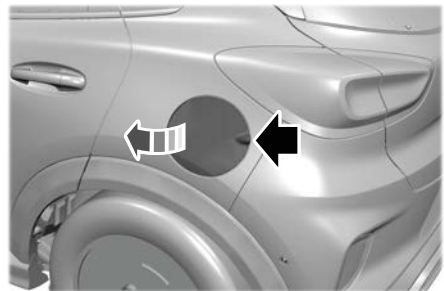
When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A Mains.
- B Socket Outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Universal home charge cord.

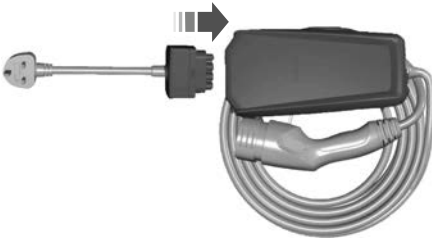
1. Apply the electric parking brake.

Note: The electric parking brake must be applied to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.



2. Pull the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.

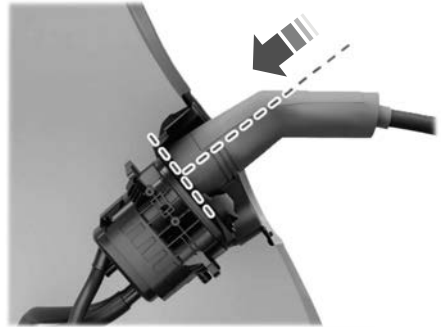
Charging Your Vehicle



3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to the set target charge unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See **Charging Settings** (page 192).

Note: Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the indicator light will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

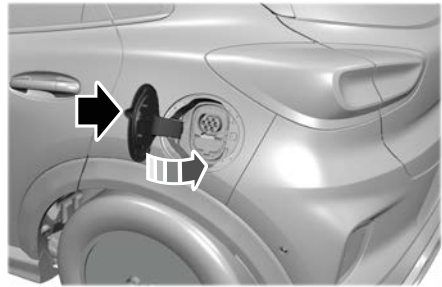
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 191).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING IN PUBLIC

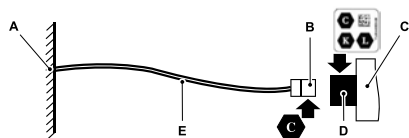
Charging at an AC charge station with cables attached.



AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



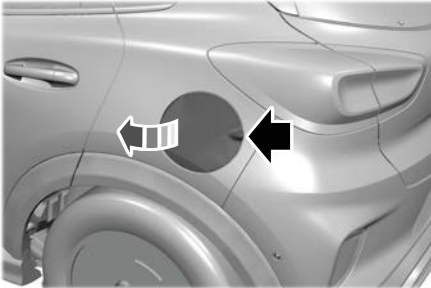
- A AC charge station.
B Charge coupler.

Charging Your Vehicle

- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.

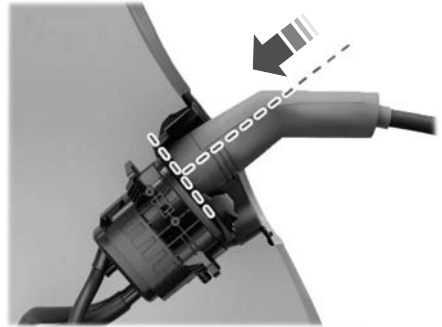
Note: The electric parking brake must be applied to charge.



2. Pull the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to the set target charge unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See **Charging Settings** (page 192).

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the indicator light will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Charging Your Vehicle

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

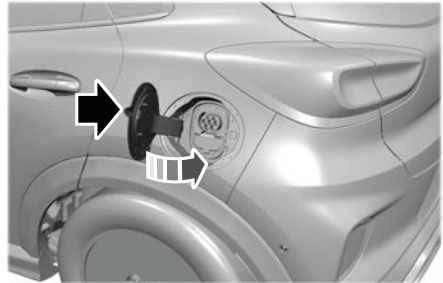
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 191).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

Charging at an AC charge station without cables attached or at a wall box.

Charge wall boxes are optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.



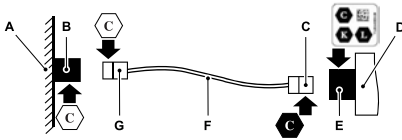
AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

Charging Your Vehicle

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

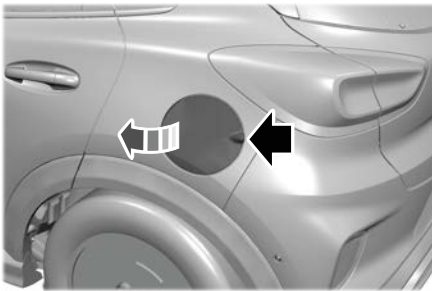
You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.

Note: The electric parking brake must be applied to charge.



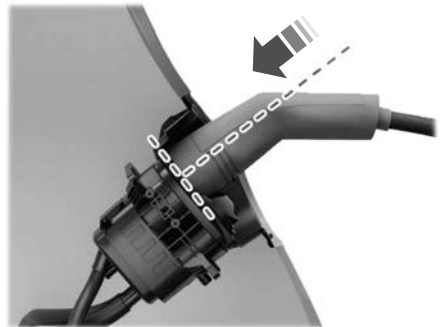
2. Pull the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.



4. Plug the charge station side coupler into the charge station port.

Note: To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the vehicle side coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Charging Your Vehicle



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to the set target charge unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See **Charging Settings** (page 192).

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the indicator light will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

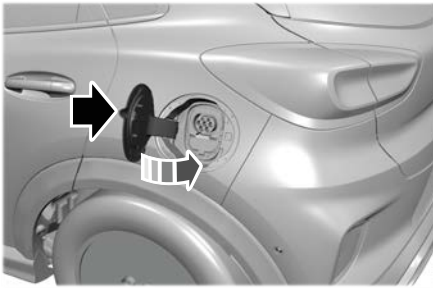
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 191).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.

Charging Your Vehicle



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

DC CHARGING



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle app.

We recommend ending DC charges at 80% state of charge.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging allows the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

Note: The vehicle could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

Note: When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

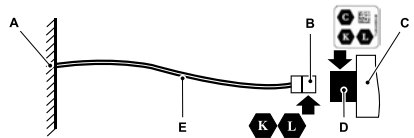
Note: Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

Note: The vehicle could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.

Note: Based on vehicle and battery configuration, the vehicle may charge to a value less than 100% on DC to optimize charging time and battery longevity. If you need to DC charge your vehicle above this level, use the Target Charge to raise the target charge level. See **Charging Settings** (page 192).

To charge the high-voltage battery at a charge station:

When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

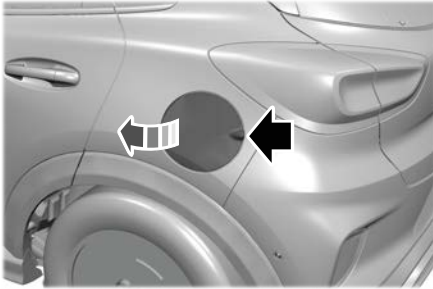


- A DC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.

Note: The electric parking brake must be applied to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

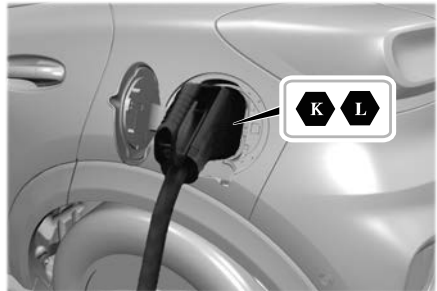
Charging Your Vehicle



2. Pull the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Select the appropriate DC charge station coupler.
5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged, the indicator light illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Note: The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Charging Your Vehicle

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.
2. Close the dust cap cover.

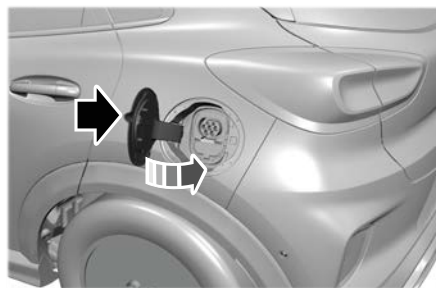
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 191).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.



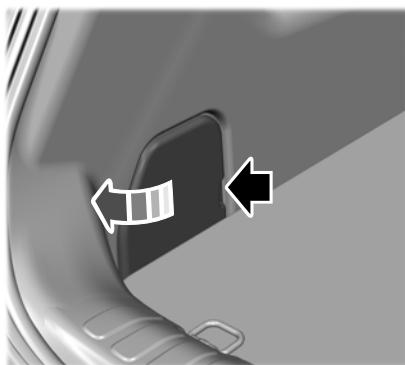
3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

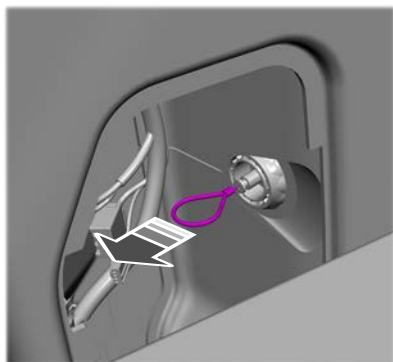
Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the liftgate.



3. Open the trim panel in the left side of the luggage compartment.

Charging Your Vehicle



Note: *If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.*

CHARGING SETTINGS



You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the Ford app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press charge settings.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

4. Pull the manual release pin in the direction shown.

Note: *Only a light effort is required. The pull distance is approximately 3 cm (1.18 in).*

5. Remove the charge coupler from the vehicle charge port.
6. Close the trim panel.
7. Close the liftgate.

Note: *The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release pin resets.*

Charge Status	Description
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your vehicle settings. You must plug your vehicle in prior to the start time to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charge Status	Description
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the Ford app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC Fast Charge station and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.
Charging Station Malfunction	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Estimated Vehicle Driving Range

Displays the estimated distance the vehicle can travel with the current high voltage battery charge level. See **Vehicle Range Display** (page 110).

Live Charging Information

When the vehicle is charging, the following charging speed information is displayed:

Charging Your Vehicle

- Live Charging Power (Kilowatt)
- Live Charging Current (Ampere)

Note: *Live charging current is only displayed when the vehicle is AC charging.*

Target Charge

Displays the charge percentage at which charging stops and can be adjusted using the main slider.

Note: *Daily and trip labels are displayed to suggest the target charge for each of these usages based on battery life and vehicle range.*

Note: *Avoid charging to over 90% before making long descents downhill. Take advantage of your regenerative braking system by coasting as you descend. It will boost your battery energy, maintain brake performance and reduce wear and tear on your brakes.*

Charging End Time

When charging, the estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the end time displays based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.*

Departure Times Card

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

Press the departures times card to access the departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle

can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.*

Note: *For the system to be able to maintain the battery, the vehicle must be able to draw power from connected equipment.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the Ford app. Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.*

Departure and Comfort

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

Note: *The departure and comfort settings do not apply when connected to a DC fast charger.*

1. Press the departures times card on the charge settings screen.
2. Select a time.

Note: *Two time settings are shown for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.*

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

Note: *Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.*

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: The next departure time and cabin temperature are displayed.

Note: Cabin conditioning comfort level could vary depending on if you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.

Preferred Charge Times Card

Displays the preferred charge times set for the current location.

Press the preferred charge times card to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

When you are at a saved charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred charge schedule. You can set one preferred charge time for weekdays and another one for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: For saved charging locations, your vehicle prioritizes charging during your preferred charge times. Charging outside these charge time windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in. The vehicle stops charging and waits for the preferred charge times when the remaining charging can be contained in the preferred charge windows.

Note: You can also access this feature using the Ford app.

Preferred Charge Times

Follow these steps to set preferred charge times for a charging location.

Note: The vehicle uses your current location to create the new charge schedule. Before saving a new location, ensure that the vehicle has successfully charged at that location for at least a few minutes.

Note: Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.

1. Press the preferred charge times card on the charge settings screen.
2. To add the current charging location, press the add location button. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.
3. Edit the nickname of the location and press the next button.

Note: The name of the location cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.

4. Set one preferred charge time for weekdays and or weekends by specifying if the charging time applies to weekdays or weekends and the start and end time of the charge time. After defining the preferred charge times for weekdays and or weekends, press the save button to store the settings.

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

5. Return to the previous screen and see the summary of the preferred charge times for this location. Press the back arrow to return to the charge settings screen or press the location to change its settings.

Advanced Menu

Allows you to limit the current rate when AC charging to prevent circuit breakers from tripping.

Charging Your Vehicle

AC Rate

Follow these steps to set the AC rate and limit the current anytime the vehicle is AC charging.

1. Press the advanced menu on the charge settings screen.
2. Set the AC rate using the slider.
3. Return to the previous screen to save the value set.

- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The Ford app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS

Charging Your Vehicle



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Is vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your vehicle and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer support the 12 volt battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state.
Charge station malfunction See manual	Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the station provider.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

My vehicle does not charge

- Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from your vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is properly connected into the mobile charger control box. If the mobile charger is warm, or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

My vehicle is not conditioning before my departure time

- If your home charging equipment has smart settings or programable settings, they may interfere with vehicle charge settings. In order for the vehicle to perform scheduled functions, such as scheduled charging or preconditioning prior to a departure time, power must be available to the vehicle.

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission. Engage the clutch smoothly for best operation. Engaging the clutch abruptly can cause damage to the transmission or clutch system that is not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

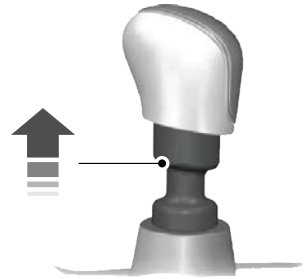
1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.33 L (1.4 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 218).

Manual Transmission

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid 75W MX KU7J-M2C955-AA	WSS-M2C955-A1

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Ford vehicles incorporate innovative transmissions to boost fuel efficiency and reduce greenhouse gases, among other benefits. Optimizing performance involves balancing many vehicle attributes including acceleration, handling, shift-feel, fuel economy, or hauling and towing capacity. Designing a transmission in light of that balance and to meet varied customer expectations and preferences, from smoother shift to quick shift and everything in between, may result in what some operators could perceive as a brief jerking or shaking sensation during gear changes. That is a normal part of transmission operation. If you have concerns about your transmission, please visit your Ford-authorized dealer. If the vehicle has a malfunction during normal use because of a defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship during the warranty term, Ford will service the vehicle under warranty. Transmission service may be a software modification (including calibration upgrades) to alter the subjective driving characteristics of your vehicle, such as transmission shift-feel, that may better fit your personal preferences. To the extent Ford offers a software modification to enhance customer satisfaction, the service is not evidence of the existence of a defect or to cure an impairment to the use, value or safety of the vehicle.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the electric parking brake when the selector is in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

SPORT (S) - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In sport (S) your vehicle holds low gears.

Note: We recommend using this mode when driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 336).

SPORT (S) - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In sport (S) your vehicle holds gears longer.

You can shift gears manually in this mode. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 204).

Note: We recommend using this mode for a sportier feel or when driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

P R N D S

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region this may not be applicable.

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear.

Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.



Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Note: Hold the right paddle for a few seconds to turn off the feature manually.

Note: The feature switches off if neither paddle is pulled within a short period of time.

Manually Shifting Gears in Sport (S)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 336).



Shift to sport (S) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

Automatic Transmission

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



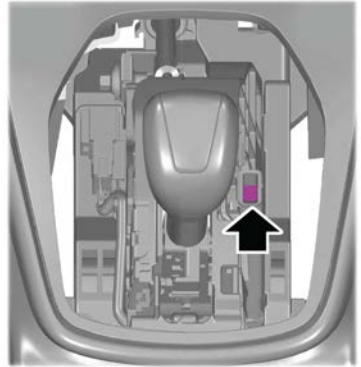
WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park



1. Remove the panel.



2. Locate the access hole.
3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, push the brake shift interlock lever toward the front of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.35 ± 0.1 L (4.6 ± 0.1 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid T-DC	WSS-M2C218-A1/A2

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission too hot Press brake Transmission over-heating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, leave the engine running and allow the transmission to cool. Wait until the message disappears.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).

Electric Motor

ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if a fuse is blown. See **Fuses** (page 359).

Note: Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: Your vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake if you attempt to exit your vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 209).

Note: A tone could sound when you press the electric parking brake button.

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Your vehicle is free to roll as long as you remain in the driver seat.

Roll-away protection is active in neutral (N) and automatically applies the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle.

SELECTOR POSITIONS

PARK (P)

Park By Brake

This feature replaces the transmission park (P) position on the selector with the electric parking brake button.



Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector applies the electric parking brake and also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 224).

Note: A tone could sound if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the parking brake.

Electric Motor

If you want to keep your vehicle in a free rolling state, roll-away protection needs to be deactivated. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 209).

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

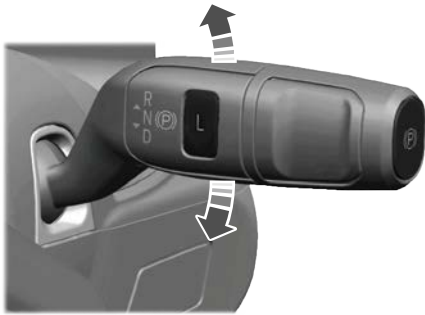
Note: Various levels of brake energy recuperation are available when in drive (D).

LOW (L)

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when you release the accelerator pedal.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 336).

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



The position selector is on the right-hand side of the steering column.

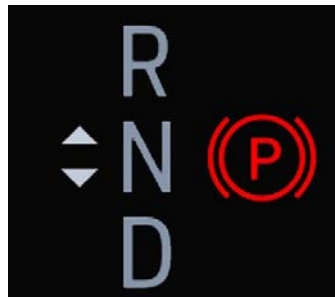
1. Power your vehicle on. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 150).
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).

Note: When you select neutral (N), an instructional message appears, asking if you want to stay in neutral (N) when exiting the vehicle. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 209).

4. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
5. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
6. Press the low (L) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.
7. To apply the electric parking brake, press the electric parking brake button on the selector when the vehicle is stationary. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 224).

SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Electric Motor

ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning

- Sounds when you press the electric parking brake button on the selector.
- Sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the electric parking brake.

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is always active on default. It secures the vehicle by automatically applying the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button.

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. In this case the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver leaves the vehicle, for example in an automatic car wash.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. See **Towing Your Vehicle Precautions** (page 354).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You press the electric parking brake button.
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- A message appears after selecting drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) with the driver door closed.

SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

4. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

Note: *A permanent confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

Note: *A tone could sound when you deactivate roll-away protection.*

5. Release the brake pedal.

Electric Motor

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.

2. Shift into a position other than neutral (N) or press the electric parking brake button to turn roll-away protection on.

Note: *If drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.*

Electric Motor

ELECTRIC MOTOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC MOTOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake will engage at low speed	You pressed the electric parking brake button at a high speed. When the vehicle reaches a preset slower speed the electric parking brake fully applies to secure the vehicle. If the electric parking brake is not needed, shift into drive (D) and continue driving.
Vehicle may move Press park brake button to secure vehicle	Roll away protection might be turned off. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle. Press the electric parking brake button to secure the vehicle.
Press brake to shift	You tried to release the electric parking brake without first pressing and holding the brake pedal. Always press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) when the electric parking brake is applied.
To stay in neutral when exiting vehicle select N again	You shifted into neutral (N) position. To disable roll-away protection, shift into neutral (N) again. When roll-away protection is disabled, your vehicle does not apply the electric parking brake automatically when the driver exits the vehicle. You need to press the electric parking brake button to secure the vehicle.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode Press brake to shift	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode. Press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) when you re-enable roll away protection.

Electric Motor

Message	Details
To park seek level ground	The electric parking brake may not be able to prevent the vehicle from rolling when the brake pedal is released. Drive to a flat area where the vehicle can be safely parked. Make sure that the vehicle does not roll when you release the brake pedal before exiting the vehicle. If necessary, use wheel chocks to prevent the vehicle from moving. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, gear shifting, handling and powertrain response.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - EXCLUDING: ST

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - ST

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.



You can press the button on the steering wheel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.



Press the button on the steering wheel to directly turn sport mode on and off.

DRIVE MODES - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience.

Note: *If you switch off your vehicle in a mode other than Normal, the system prompts you to return to this previous mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system stays in Normal mode.*

SLIPPERY



Use this mode for less than ideal road conditions such as snow and ice covered roads or for firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.

This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness and optimizes traction and stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control in slick driving conditions.

SPORT - EXCLUDING: ST



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: *Auto-start-stop could switch off when you select this mode.*

Drive Mode Control

SPORT - ST



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: Press the button on the steering wheel to directly select this mode.

Note: Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.

DRIVE MODES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

Note: This mode sets a speed limit, for example to 105 km/h (65.2 mph). To temporarily exceed the set speed limit, firmly press the accelerator pedal.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SLIPPERY



Use this mode for less than ideal road conditions such as snow and ice covered roads or for firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.

This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness and optimizes traction and stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control in slick driving conditions.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SPORT



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Eco Coach - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

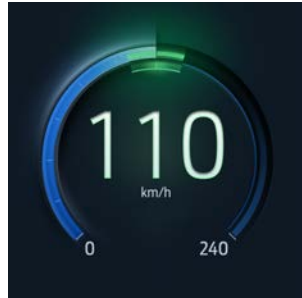
Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The instantaneous efficiency level is based on the average of instantaneous acceleration, deceleration, speed or highway cruise and gear shifting. This average is displayed by a green area on the speedometer. When reaching maximum efficiency, the speedometer needle is centered in the green area. At minimum efficiency, the speedometer needle approaches the edges of the green area. It approaches the upper part if the efficiency level decreases during acceleration, and the lower part if the efficiency level decreases during deceleration. The needle position continuously updates to indicate the instantaneous efficiency level.



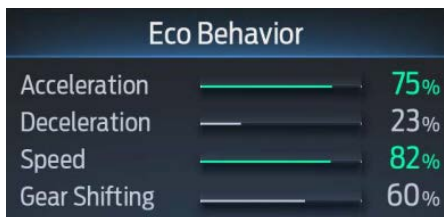
VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Eco Coach**.
5. Select a drive mode to view instantaneous efficiency level.

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as colored bars.

Eco Coach - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle



The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

The button is on the center console.

1. Select **ECO**.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select **MyView**.
4. Select **Configure MyView**.
5. Select **Eco Behaviour**.
6. Switch your vehicle off.

One Pedal Drive - Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep.

See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 217).

ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move if the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Note: *Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.*

ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position or applying the electric parking brake when driving.
- Using active park assist.

- Using cruise control.
- Selecting a drive mode other than Normal, Eco or Sport disables one pedal drive.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce accelerator pedal ability to slow the vehicle.

SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Switch **1-Pedal Drive** on or off.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR - EXCLUDING: BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe

stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Apply the electric parking brake and switch your vehicle off. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

Avoid charging to over 90% before making long descents downhill. Take advantage of your regenerative braking system by coasting as you descend. It boosts your battery energy, improves brake performance and reduces wear and tear on your brakes.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Brakes

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 219).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Brakes

Note: We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards or component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS - EXCLUDING: BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer. It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch your vehicle on to confirm the lamp is functional. When the lamp flashes red or stays illuminated red, it indicates low brake fluid level or a hydraulic brake system fault. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn. Have the system checked.

There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake button. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 408).*

Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake - Manual Transmission

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electric parking brake button is on the position selector on the right-hand side of the steering column.



Press the button or power off when your vehicle is stationary.

Note: The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the electric parking brake is applied.

Note: Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Park (P)** (page 207).

Note: The electric parking brake automatically applies if you attempt to leave your vehicle without pressing the button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 209).

Note: Vehicles must use rear brake drums as well as rear brake linings released by Ford or meeting Ford specifications during the vehicle life to ensure adequate park brake performance.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Push the button and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds, the transmission shifts into neutral (N) and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The vehicle continues to slow down as long as you hold the electric parking brake button. If you release the button the vehicle rolls freely. The button can be repressed, held, and released as necessary to achieve the desired braking rate. The electric parking brake secures the vehicle when it slows to a preset speed unless you reselect Drive (D) before reaching that preset speed.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal then switch your vehicle on. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 150).
2. While holding the brake pedal, shift into gear or neutral (N).

Note: *Your vehicle is ready to drive when you select drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R).*

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 347).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Electric Parking Brake



The electric parking brake indicator flashes red temporarily while you are applying it and stays illuminated red when the electric parking brake is successfully applied. If it flashes red continuously this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*



When the lamp flashes yellow or stays illuminated yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake will engage at low speed	You pressed the electric parking brake button at a high speed. When the vehicle reaches a preset slower speed the electric parking brake fully applies to secure the vehicle. If the electric parking brake is not needed, shift into drive (D) and continue driving.
Vehicle may move Press park brake button to secure vehicle	Roll away protection might be turned off. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle. Press the electric parking brake button to secure the vehicle.
Press brake to shift	You tried to release the electric parking brake without first pressing and holding the brake pedal. Always press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) when the electric parking brake is applied.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode Press brake to shift	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode. Press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) when you re-enable roll away protection.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

Message	Details
To park seek level ground	The electric parking brake may not be able to prevent the vehicle from rolling when the brake pedal is released. Drive to a flat area where the vehicle can be safely parked. Make sure that the vehicle does not roll when you release the brake pedal before exiting the vehicle. If necessary, use wheel chocks to prevent the vehicle from moving. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake malfunction To recover press brake pedal and select R or D	Park brake system indicates a fault which prevents the system from normal operation. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while pressing the brake pedal. The park brake system tries to move the electric parking brake to return back to normal functionality. During this procedure you may notice normal actuation noises of the electric parking brake. If the system is able to return to normal functionality, warning indicators disappear and the vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while pressing the brake pedal to continue normal driving.
Park brake malfunction Recovery unsuccessful Turn off vehicle and try again	Identified fault within the park brake system is still present which prevents system from the normal operation. While pressing the brake pedal, switch your vehicle off and back on by pressing the push button start twice. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while keeping the brake pedal pressed. The park brake system tries to move the electric parking brake to return back to normal functionality. During this procedure you may notice normal actuation noises of the electric parking brake. If the system is able to return to normal functionality, warning indicators disappear and the vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while pressing the brake pedal to continue normal driving.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST


Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).


HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK


Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).


If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.


REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

 **WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

Note: When you switch traction control off, reverse brake assist automatically deactivates, except for cross traffic alert sensor based braking.

Note: The system is unavailable when cross traffic alert is off.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when cross traffic alert is off.

Note: The default setting is on in some regions.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Displays when a related subsystem or feature error has occurred. Make sure the rear view camera and side cameras are clean and not obstructed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras, parking sensors and cross traffic alert sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and the sensors are not dirty or obstructed.
- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 229).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 309).
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 234).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.

- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 242). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 309). See **Parking Aids – Information Messages** (page 245). See **Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages** (page 310).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

Note: You can only switch the system on if the driver seat is occupied.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake is designed to automatically release.

Note: The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.

The system may not work if any of the following occurs:

- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open or the driver seat is not occupied.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.
Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck? Yes No	You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph).

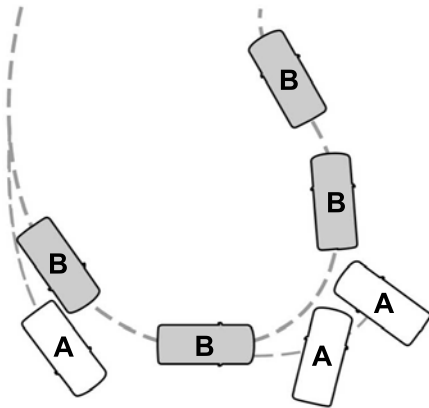
Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

Stability Control

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - ST



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport, Track or Drift mode when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Reducing Stability Control

ESC

Press the button on the instrument panel. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.*

Note: *If you switch stability control to reduced mode, traction control turns off.*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.*

Switching the System Off

ESC

Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the system off. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *If you switch stability control off, traction control also turns off*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system turns off if there is a malfunction.*

STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

STABILITY CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when you switch the system to reduced mode or off. It also illuminates if you select track mode.

Stability Control

STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
ESC Sport mode	The status of the stability control system after you switched it to reduced mode.
ESC off	The status of the stability control system after you switched it off.
ESC on	The status of the stability control system after you switched it on.
Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck? Yes No	You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph).

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING ADAPTIVE STEERING

Adaptive Learning (If Equipped)

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and crash avoidance systems.

Note: *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.

Steering

- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Note: If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock malfunction Service now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering

STEERING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?

- Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?

- A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Mute the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 360 DEGREE CAMERA



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Parking Aids

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL REAR VIEW CAMERA

The system can be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and cannot be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 18 km/h (11 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and the audible warning mutes.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stop after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PARKING AID CAMERA



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

PARKING AID INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 360 DEGREE CAMERA



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and change colour depending on distance.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator area remains black.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Parking Aids

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Parking Sensors malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Parking Sensors	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Rear Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Rear Parking Sensors	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Parking Sensors On Off	Displays the parking aid status.
Rear Parking Sensors On Off	Displays the parking aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

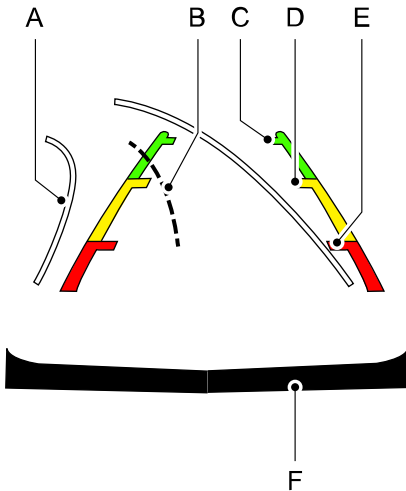


The rear view camera is on the liftgate.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear View Camera



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

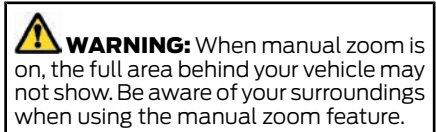
The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE/PARKING AID CAMERA



Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

Rear View Camera



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the image.

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT - VEHICLES WITH: BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE/PARKING AID CAMERA



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the image.

Automatic Camera View Change

When you shift to reverse (R) and the system detects an approaching vehicle, it automatically changes from the normal rear view to the 180 degree rear view.

When the intended path is free of cross traffic, the camera automatically switches back to normal rear view.



Press the rear normal view button on the touchscreen during the automatic view change to temporarily switch the automatic camera view change off.

Note: When you shift to reverse (R) again the automatic camera view change is reactivated.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



Rear View Camera

You can only switch the audio on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You apply the electric parking brake.

360 Degree Camera

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

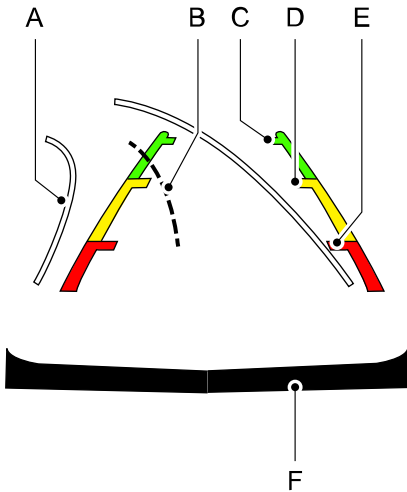
Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

360 Degree Camera



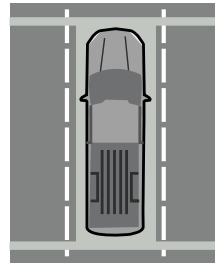
- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

360 Degree Camera

Note: The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

Note: The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

Note: The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.

When the electric parking brake is applied, the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

Note: The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press the camera system button on the instrument panel, below the touchscreen. Then press the camera button on the touchscreen to access the camera options.



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h in metric units or 15 mph in imperial units.

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to the current vehicle speed or 20 km/h (15 mph), whichever is greater. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is active or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off, the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press either the SET+ or SET- buttons to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the SET+ button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET+ button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-

Press the SET- button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET- button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Cruise Control

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Adaptive Cruise Control False Passing Prevention

When traveling on motorways, the adaptive cruise control system aims to prevent prohibited passing maneuvers if a slower vehicle is detected in the left-hand lane, or right-hand lane in left-hand traffic. This prevention function on passing applies when the speed of traffic in the adjacent lane is greater than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph). In these situations, the adaptive cruise control system maintains a distance to the vehicle in front in the adjacent lane and does not accelerate to pass. In slower moving traffic, the system allows the passing but limits the speed difference.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

Adaptive Cruise Control False Passing Prevention

When traveling on motorways, the adaptive cruise control system aims to prevent prohibited passing maneuvers if a slower vehicle is detected in the left-hand lane, or right-hand lane in left-hand traffic. This prevention function on passing applies when the speed of traffic in the adjacent lane is greater than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph). In these situations, the adaptive cruise control system maintains a distance to the vehicle in front in the adjacent lane and does not accelerate to pass. In slower moving traffic, the system allows the passing but limits the speed difference.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - GASOLINE



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations



WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).



WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

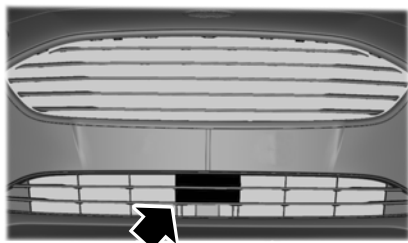


WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adaptive Cruise Control



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

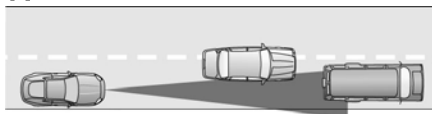
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 275).

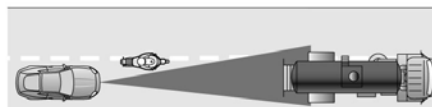
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

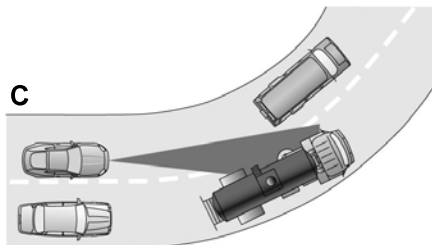
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

Adaptive Cruise Control

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 253).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 253).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units, adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.



Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Adaptive Cruise Control

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h in metric units or 15 mph in imperial units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET- Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and a message display.

Adaptive Cruise Control



Message	Details
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press RES to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when driving on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, the vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

Adaptive Cruise Control

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal Cruise Control**.

LANE CENTERING

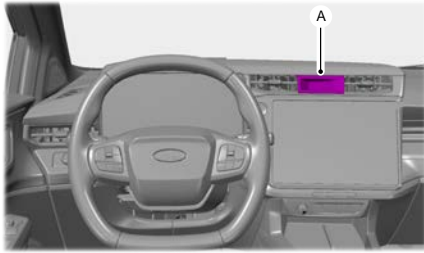
HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors, the front windshield camera sensor, the driver facing camera sensor and the steering sensor to operate. Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on motorways.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses a driver facing camera and infrared lighting to monitor your eyes and head position to detect if you are distracted. If the system determines that you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road.

Adaptive Cruise Control



A Driver facing camera.

Note: *The driver facing camera does not capture facial features or other personal data, it only tracks head position and eye movements.*


Depending on your seating position, the camera may fail to detect your face. For the most optimal experience from the driver facing camera:


- Make sure you are not wearing any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.


Note: *When lane centering is active, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, camera data may record through the vehicle event data recorder. See **Event Data** (page 29).*


Note: *No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for keeping your eyes on the road at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel, the steering system or the driver facing camera have been made. Any changes or modifications to these could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system attempts to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane as well as maintain speed and gap control. The system may not be able to perform these tasks in all situations. Do not use the system in complex or uncertain driving conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Your vehicle could drift out of the lane of travel. Always be prepared to manually steer your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 255).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times. Adaptive cruise control with lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 268).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering sensor detects that your hands are on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- No trailer is attached to the vehicle.
- Your eyes are on the road.

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.

Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 257).

Adaptive Cruise Control

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 266).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

The driver-facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.

- You are not in the field of view of the camera.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around extensively.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Switching Lane Centering On



Press the button on the steering wheel.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Make sure both systems are active.

Switching Lane Centering Off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:



Press the button on the steering wheel. A message appears on the instrument cluster display prompting you to confirm.

Note: *Lane centering turns off each time you switch your vehicle off.*

Note: *Lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 267).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

Adaptive Cruise Control

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Press **Lane Centring Assist**.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

When the system detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, it alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster display to put your hands on the steering wheel. After the first alert, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster display and an audible warning.

When the system detects that you are not looking at the road for a certain period of time, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road. Depending on which direction you look, either a message appears in the instrument cluster display or a message together with an audible warning appears.

If you do not react to the warnings, the system cancels, quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows your vehicle down to a stop while maintaining steering control. If your vehicle starts to slow down or stops after system cancellation, you must take full control of your vehicle.

To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation do the following:

- Look to the road so your eyes are recognized by the camera.
- Steer slightly so your hands are recognized as being on the steering wheel.
- Press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal. The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *If the system detects repeated inactivity, it disables until the next key cycle.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, the lane markings are not available, and your hands are on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, the lane markings are not available, and your hands are not on the steering wheel and/or your eyes are not on the road, the system immediately alerts you to take control of your vehicle.

If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights automatically, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control. If your vehicle starts to slow down or stops after an automatic cancellation, you must take full control of your vehicle.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross each other.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.
- Your eyes are not on the road, or your hands are not on the steering wheel.

Adaptive Cruise Control

To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation do the following:

- Look to the road so your eyes are recognized by the camera.
- Steer slightly so your hands are recognized as being on the steering wheel.
- Press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal. The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *If your vehicle slows down due to the driver's inactivity, the system disables, and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. To reset the system, stop and restart your vehicle.*

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering cancels:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped and the system detects that your hands are on the steering wheel.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

Note: *When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.*

Note: *The system always turns off when you start your vehicle.*

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray or white status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Blue status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Gray or white status with an audible tone indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel.
Watch the road	Return your attention to the road.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Lane centring not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Driver monitor camera cannot detect face See manual	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you. Adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver monitor camera malfunction See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending on which cluster type you have.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 272).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Traffic Sign Recognition** (page 321).

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 455). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 255).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Adaptive Cruise Control

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 213). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system may not always set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on or off.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed sign indicator



Adaptive Cruise Control



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Road geometry indicator symbols



Left curve.



Right curve.



Left intersection.



Right intersection.



Left roundabout.



Right roundabout.

Adaptive Cruise Control

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive Cruise Control not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive Cruise Control malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Normal cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

WHAT IS BLUECRUISE

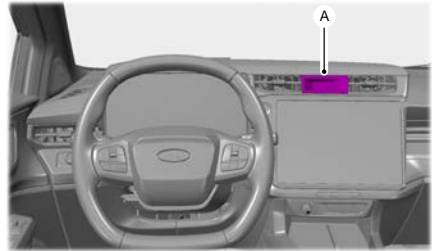
BlueCruise keeps your vehicle centered in the lane and offers the possibility to not permanently engage the steering wheel in certain situations when using adaptive cruise control.

HOW DOES BLUECRUISE WORK

Lane centering with BlueCruise uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors, the front windshield camera sensor, the driver facing camera sensor and the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on motorways. In addition, lane centering with BlueCruise allows you to not permanently engage the steering wheel in certain areas of motorways, called BlueZones.

When active, lane centering with BlueCruise uses a driver facing camera and infrared lighting to monitor your eyes and head position to detect if you are distracted. If the system determines that you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road.



A Camera and lighting areas.

Note: *The position of the camera is mirrored in vehicles with right-hand drive.*

Depending on your seating position, the camera may fail to detect your face.

For the most optimal experience from the driver facing camera:


- Make sure you are not wearing any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.


Note: *When lane centering with BlueCruise is active, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, camera data may record through the vehicle event data recorder. See **Event Data** (page 29).*


Note: *No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.*


BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

BLUECRUISE PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for keeping your eyes on the road at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel, the steering system or the driver facing camera have been made. Any changes or modifications to these could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.


 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system attempts to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane as well as maintain speed and gap control. The system may not be able to perform these tasks in all situations. Do not use the system in complex or uncertain driving conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Your vehicle could drift out of the lane of travel. Always be prepared to manually steer your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

Once activated, Ford will use data related to the feature and maps, including location, vehicle, driving and camera data to provide the BlueCruise service. Please see the Ford app terms and Privacy Policy for further information.

Driver-assist features are supplemental and do not replace the driver's attention, judgment and need to control the vehicle. BlueCruise is a feature aiding you to stay in lane and does not require you to permanently engage the steering wheel when travelling in certain areas of the motorway called BlueZones. Always watch the road and be prepared to resume control of the vehicle. It does not replace safe driving. See **BlueCruise Limitations** (page 278).

A free trial with regular map updates begins when you activate the trial. The service automatically continues after the free trial, unless you cancel your subscription. Plans are subject to change. See your Ford Account for terms and details. Service and features depend on compatible Vodafone network availability. Evolving technology/network coverage/vehicle capability may limit functionality and prevent operation of connected features. Failure to regularly update could result in BlueCruise being unavailable.

BLUECRUISE REQUIREMENTS

BlueCruise only activates when all of the following occur:

- BlueCruise is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **BlueCruise Settings** (page 279).
- Adaptive cruise control is on.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel.
- Your eyes are on the road.

- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane, between two line markings.
- No trailer is attached to the vehicle.

Note: For BlueCruise mode to work, your vehicle must be on certain limited access divided freeways.

Note: The system may require updated software for BlueCruise mode. See **Vehicle Software Updates** (page 477).

Note: BlueCruise mode is only available depending on local regulations and customer subscription.

BLUECRUISE LIMITATIONS

Any of the following conditions could result in BlueCruise not correctly operating:

- You do not have your vehicle centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The curve in the road is too small.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- You are using the system in areas under construction.
- If you make any aftermarket modifications to the steering system.
- You are using a spare tire.
- When towing a trailer.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

The driver-facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.
- You are not in the field of view of the camera.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around extensively.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

Note: *The system has limited steering assistance and may not be sufficient for all driving situations.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line.*

Note: *The information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.*

BLUECRUISE SETTINGS

Enabling BlueCruise

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Lane Centring With BlueCruise**.

Enabling Activation Prompts

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Activation Prompts**.

SWITCHING BLUECRUISE ON AND OFF

Switching BlueCruise On

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Using Activation Prompts



When the prompt appears, press the button to switch BlueCruise on.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Note: *You must enable activation prompts in the touchscreen.*

Using Steering Wheel Controls



Using the adaptive cruise control and lateral support buttons, make sure both systems are active. BlueCruise activates.



Switching BlueCruise Off



To switch off BlueCruise, press the adaptive cruise control button or the lateral support button. When using the lateral support button, a question mark appears in the instrument cluster display. Press OK to confirm it.



BlueCruise Manual Cancellation

When you perform the following actions, BlueCruise will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

BlueCruise is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped and the system detects that your hands are on the steering wheel.
- You steer your vehicle out of lane.

Note: *When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.*

Note: *The system always turns off when you start your vehicle.*

BLUECRUISE ALERTS

When the system is in lane centering assist mode or is transitioning to lane centering assist mode from the BlueCruise mode and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster display to put your hands on the steering wheel. After the first alert, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster display and an audible warning.

When the system is in lane centering assist mode or in BlueCruise mode and detects that you are not looking at the road for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to return your eyes to the road. Depending on which direction you look, either a message appears in the instrument cluster display or a message together with an audible warning appears.

If you do not react to the warnings, BlueCruise cancels, quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows your vehicle down to a stop while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle starts to slow down or stops after system cancellation, you must take full control of your vehicle.

To re-enable adaptive cruise control with BlueCruise after cancellation do the following:

- Look to the road so your eyes are recognized by the camera.
- Steer slightly so your hands are recognized as being on the steering wheel.
- Press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal.

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *If the system detects repeated inactivity, it disables until the next key cycle.*

BLUECRUISE AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, the lane markings are not available, and your hands are on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, the lane markings are not available, and your hands are not on the steering wheel and/or your eyes are not on the road, the system immediately alerts you to take control of your vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights automatically, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle starts to slow down or stops after an automatic cancellation, you must take full control of your vehicle.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross each another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.
- Your eyes are not on the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel.

To re-enable adaptive cruise control with BlueCruise after cancellation do the following:

- Look to the road, that your eyes are being recognized by the camera.
- Steer slightly, that your hands are recognized to be on the steering wheel.
- Press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal.

Note: *If your vehicle slows down due to the driver inactivity within a key cycle, the system disables and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. To reset the system, stop and restart your vehicle.*

BLUECRUISE INDICATORS



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray or white status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Blue status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

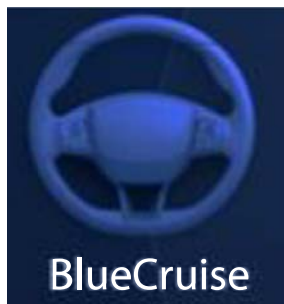
Gray or white status with an audible warning indicates a system automatic cancellation.

Lane Centering Assist Available



When this indicator is present, you must keep your hands on the steering wheel.

BlueCruise Mode Available



A graphic in the instrument cluster display of a steering wheel together with the words BlueCruise indicates you do not necessarily have to engage the steering wheel.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

IN-LANE REPOSITIONING

How Does In-Lane Repositioning Work

Lane centering with BlueCruise with in-lane repositioning uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors, the front windshield camera sensor, the driver facing camera sensor and the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system automatically adjusts your vehicle's position in the lane based on the current driving situation.

Note: *In-lane repositioning is only active when lane centering with BlueCruise is enabled while traveling on divided motorways and when any of the following occur:*

- Passing or being passed by a vehicle in an adjacent lane in close proximity.
- Driving in outer lanes.

Note: *In certain situations, the vehicle may shift slightly away without showing the indicators.*

Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also reduce sensor performance.*

Note: *The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.*

Switching In-Lane Repositioning On and Off

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.

4. Press **Lane Centring With BlueCruise**.
5. Switch **In-Lane Repositioning** on or off.

In-Lane Repositioning Indicators



Shifted towards the right-hand side of the lane.




Shifted towards the left-hand side of the lane.

BLUECRUISE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

BlueCruise - Vehicles With: Lane Centering

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel.
Watch the road	Return your attention to the road.
BlueCruise not available	Existing conditions prevents the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Driver monitor camera cannot detect face See manual	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you. Adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver monitor camera malfunction See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
BlueCruise On Watch the road Be prepared to resume control	BlueCruise is active, keep your attention on the road.
BlueCruise available Press  to activate	The system is in standby mode, press the button on the steering wheel to activate.

Note: *The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending on which cluster type you have.*

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 454).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Local Hazard Information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

LIM

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Speed Limiter

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

RES The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, when you press the button or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 455). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

LIM

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

RES

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, when you press the button or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM


The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK


The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.


Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*


LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.


 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Lane Keeping System

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Alert Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

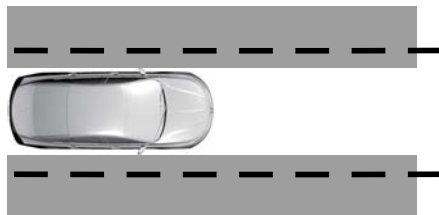
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

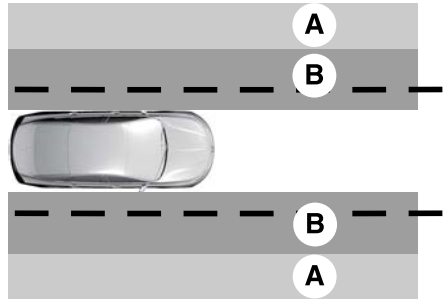
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Aid Mode and alert combines both, aid mode and steering wheel vibration alert.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.

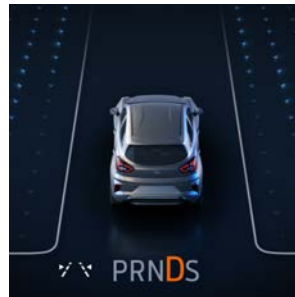


A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a white indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph), and the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.

When the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (35 mph), a gray indicator appears and lane markings do not appear.



When you switch the system off, a yellow indicator with a strikethrough appears.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert + Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

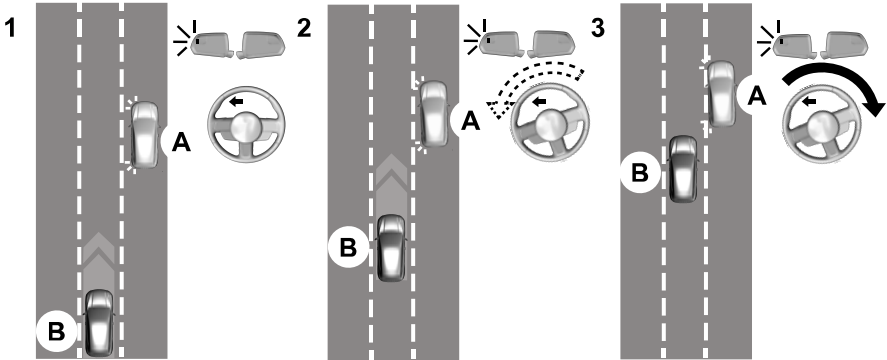


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 299).

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: *When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 302).*

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert +Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If you connect a supported trailer, the system reduces the function to only detect vehicles on both sides of the vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 302).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 302).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

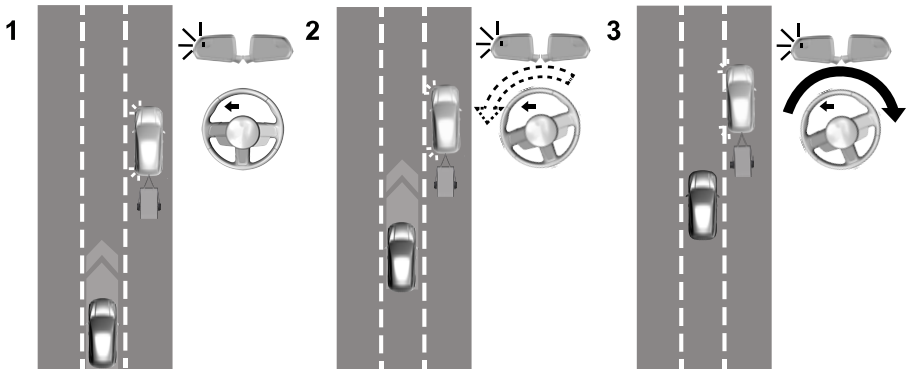


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator

flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 299).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 302).
Blind Spot Assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane-Keeping System malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Windscreen camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Windscreen camera Low visibility Clean windscreen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Windscreen camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

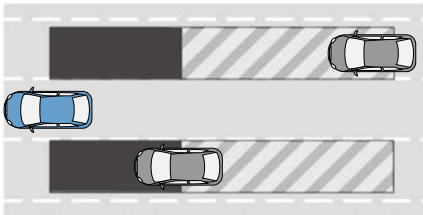
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

⚠ WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

⚠ WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

⚠ WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS - EXCLUDING: BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system does not operate in reverse (R) or when you apply the electric parking brake ((P)).

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, EXCLUDING: BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R) or when you apply the electric parking brake ((P)).*

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

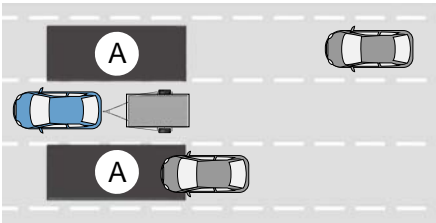
Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

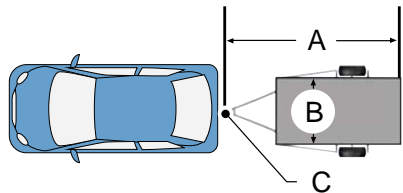
Note: The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

Blind Spot Information System

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.*

Note: *If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.*

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.

3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

Blind Spot Information System

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exit Warning

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

When exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear, it provides visual and audible alerts as occupants open a door to exit the vehicle. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly beyond a fully open door. The exit warning system becomes active when you switch your vehicle on and operates in any gear position when the vehicle is not moving.

Note: *The system cannot detect all types of traffic objects, especially objects that are slowly moving or stationary.*

Note: *While this system may provide a reminder, vehicle occupants are responsible for opening the door and exiting the vehicle with care.*

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.



WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

Exit warning shuts off approximately three minutes after your vehicle is switched off, or immediately after you lock your doors. When the vehicle battery is low and your vehicle is switched off, exit warning shuts off to conserve battery power. When exit warning turns off, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.*

Note: *The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.*

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 303).

In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch the exit warning system on and off by using the touchscreen. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Exit Warning to switch on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: Check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: Check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays when the exit warning system turns off or shuts down.
Exit Warning system malfunction	Displays when the exit warning system detects any system error.

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are mounted behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

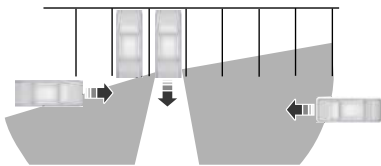
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

If you continue to reverse at a speed equal or higher than 2 km/h (1 mph) after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

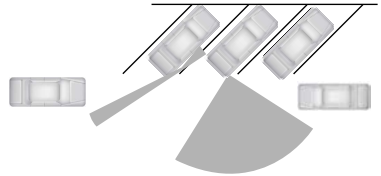
Note: There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 8 km/h (5 mph). Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: Slowly reversing helps to increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.


Cross Traffic Alert View


When you shift into reverse (R) and the system detects road users or traffic objects approaching from the sides behind your vehicle, it automatically activates the 180 degree camera view. When the intended path is clear of cross traffic, the camera automatically switches back to the previous view.


Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region, the cross traffic alert view may not be available.


Cross Traffic Alert


CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.


 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

 **WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the touchscreen.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 1 m (3 ft). For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Note: When you switch cross traffic alert on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

Switching Cross Traffic Alert View on and off

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross-Traffic Alert View** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region, the cross traffic alert view may not be available.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror. At the same time, arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is approaching.

Note: The displayed indicator may vary depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross-Traffic Alert Press OK to close	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross-Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross-Traffic malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross-Traffic Alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: *There could be different information messages if your vehicle has reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages** (page 230).*

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at

Pre-Collision Assist

speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

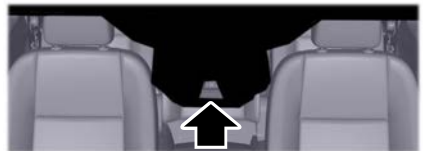
WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Pre-Collision Assist

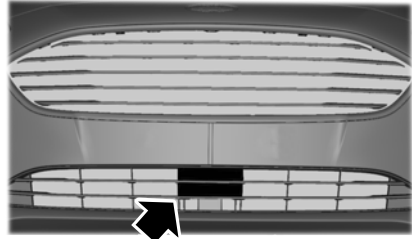
The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

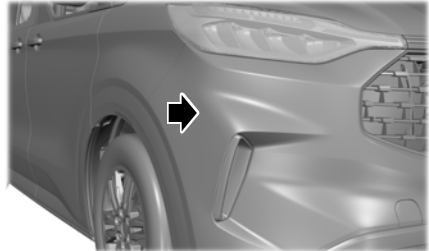
Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.



LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensors are behind the front grille below the license plate and behind the front bumper on the left and right sides.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

Pre-Collision Assist

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 313).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

Note: *Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-Collision Assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-Collision Assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: *No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 313).*

Pre-Collision Assist

The following table lists possible causes and details for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy, if your driving deteriorates or if you are driving while distracted.

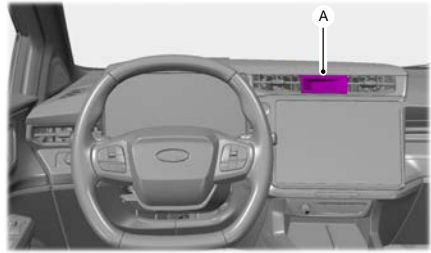
HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position, when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph). If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a warning. If you continue to not look at the road, another warning appears.





A Driver facing camera.


Note: The position of the camera is mirrored in vehicles with right-hand drive.


Note: The driver facing camera does not capture facial features or other personal data, it only tracks head position and eye movements.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 **WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

 **WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

Driver Alert



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Limitations

The driver facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.
- You are not in the camera's view.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.

- You are moving around too much.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

To get the best results from the driver facing camera:

- Make sure not to wear any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- If the driver facing camera is located behind the steering wheel, lower the steering column so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



If the system detects an issue with the driver facing camera, for example an electrical failure or a blockage in the field of view of the camera, this symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

Driver Alert



If the front windshield camera detects an issue, for example an electrical failure or a blockage caused by dirt or ice in front of the field of

view of the camera, this symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

If the symbols continue to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Windscreen camera Low visibility Clean wind- screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Windscreen camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Watch the road	The system has detected that you are distracted. Keep your eyes on the road.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver-Facing Camera cannot detect face See manual	The system cannot detect the face. Ensure that your face can be detected by the driver facing camera.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 455). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

Note: *Detection of stop and yield signs may not be available in your vehicle.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*


TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

Traffic Sign Recognition

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

 Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the system automatically switches on after every ignition cycle.*

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Chime for Speed Limit Change** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 455). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.*

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Load Carrying


PARTITIONING SYSTEM


A partitioning system compliant to ISO 27955 is available as an aftermarket accessory from our authorized dealers.


Note: *Passengers should not travel in the rear seats if you install the partitioning system behind the front seats.*


LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS


Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.


 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

 **WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.


 **WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

 **WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

Load Carrying



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 50 kg (110 lb).

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 75 kg (165 lb).

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 337).

Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.

If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 60 kg (130 lb).

Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

Luggage Compartment

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

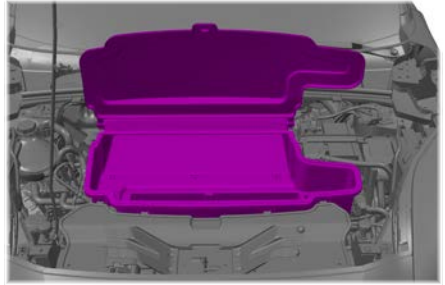
OPENING THE FRUNK - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

OPENING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Manually Opening the Frunk

1. Open the hood of your vehicle to access the frunk. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 376).

Note: Make sure to support the hood with the strut.



2. Lift the lid of the frunk manually.

CLOSING THE FRUNK - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

CLOSING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Manually lower the lid of the frunk until it is fully closed. Make sure nothing is obstructing the path.
2. Close the hood of your vehicle. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 376).

Note: Make sure to securely close the frunk before closing the hood.

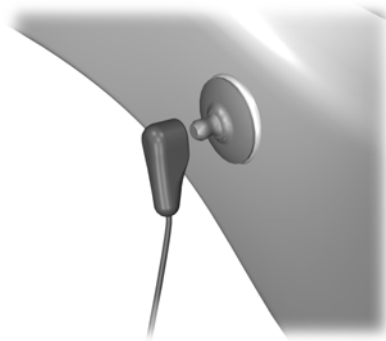
Luggage Compartment

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

Installing the Luggage Cover

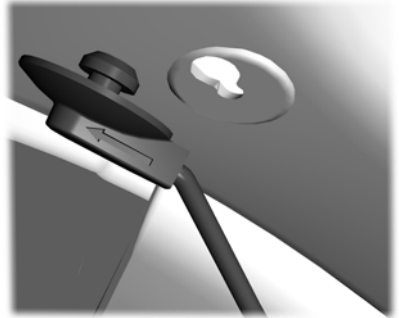


1. Place the luggage cover into the liftgate hooks.



2. Attach the retaining clips to the liftgate.

Note: Support the luggage cover when attaching the retaining clips.



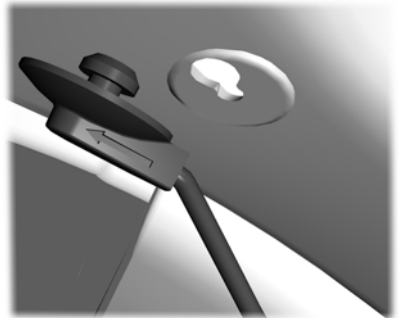
E266421

3. Attach the retaining clips to the luggage compartment trim panel.

Note: Support the luggage cover when attaching the retaining clips.

Removing the Luggage Cover

1. Open the liftgate.

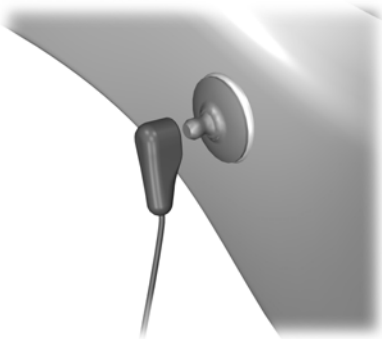


E266421

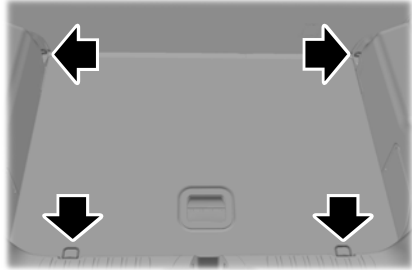
2. Detach the retaining clips from the luggage compartment trim panel.

Note: Support the luggage cover when attaching the retaining clips.

Luggage Compartment



LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



3. Detach the retaining clips from the liftgate.

Note: Support the luggage cover when detaching the retaining clips.

4. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate hooks.

You can stow the luggage cover in the luggage compartment.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



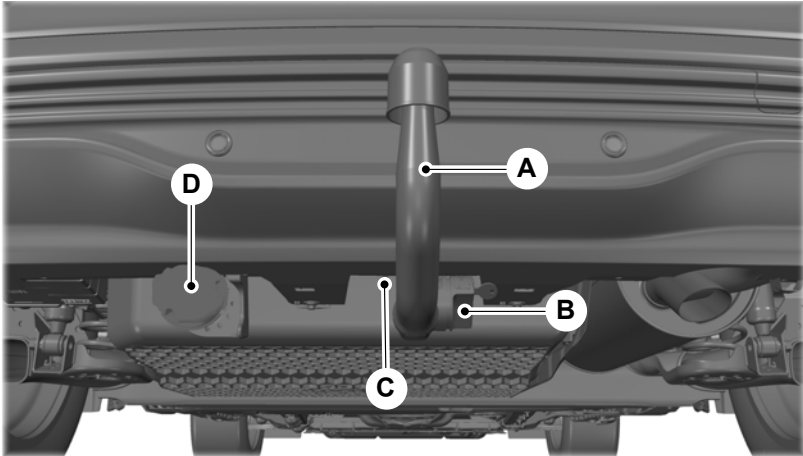
WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL COMPONENTS



- A Tow ball arm in tow position.
- B Handwheel.
- C Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- D Trailer wiring connection socket.

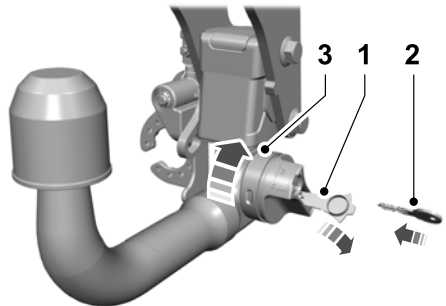
Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

DETACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.



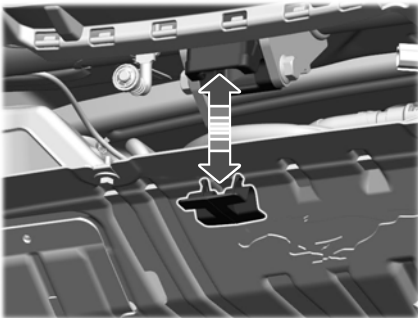
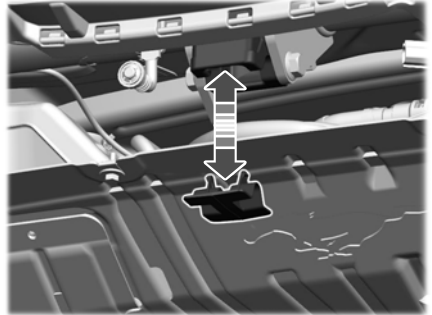
1. Remove the protective cap.

Connecting a Trailer

2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Push the handwheel inward and turn it clockwise.

Note: *The mark on the handwheel turns from green to red.*

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90° until it engages in the end position.



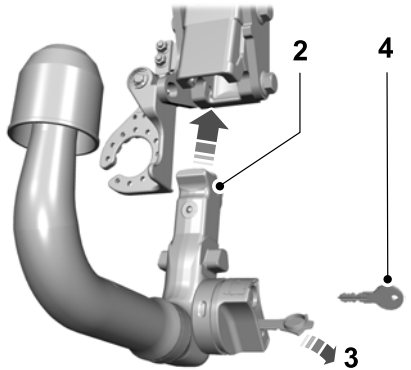
7. Insert the blanking plug.

ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

Note: *You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked, with the mark on the handwheel red. If the mark on the handwheel is amber, push the handwheel in and turn 180° clockwise to unlock.*

1. Remove the blanking plug.



2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

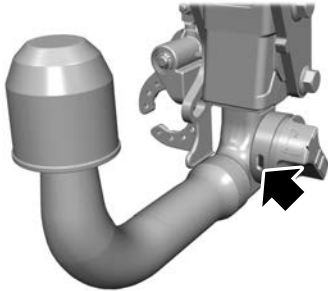
Note: *The mark on the handwheel turns from red to green.*

3. Remove the protective cap.
4. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
5. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.

Connecting a Trailer

6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90° until it engages in the end position.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks



After you attach the tow ball arm, make sure:

- The mark on the handwheel is green.
- You have locked the handwheel.
- You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Recognizing a Trailer

Make sure to connect the trailer to your vehicle with a proper fitting connector that supports your vehicle and the trailer functions.

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds or switch the turn signal lamps on for a few seconds.*

Managing Trailer Profiles

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.

You can perform multiple actions from this menu.

See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 302). See **Trailer Towing Navigation** (page 476).

Connecting a Trailer

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Wiring malfunction on trailer	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery, or your trailer battery voltage is very low.
Tow bar extended Check trailer wiring	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer brake lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer left indicator lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer right indicator lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer park lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 452).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% when towing a trailer. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 452).

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 256). See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 272).

Towing a Trailer

Note: Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

Note: The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 337).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

On vehicles with any conventional transmission, use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

On battery electric vehicles, use the 'L' mode on your gear shift selector to support downhill driving.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Engine	Transmission	kg (lb)
1.0L EcoBoost.	Manual Transmission.	75 (165)
1.0L EcoBoost.	Automatic Transmission.	75 (165)

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

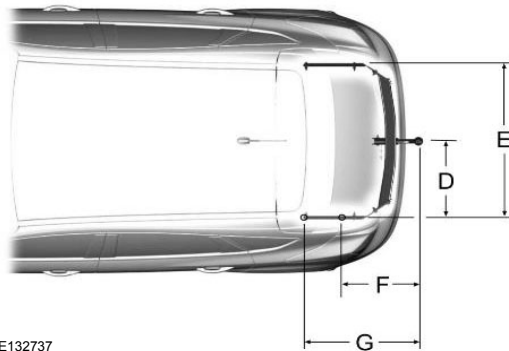
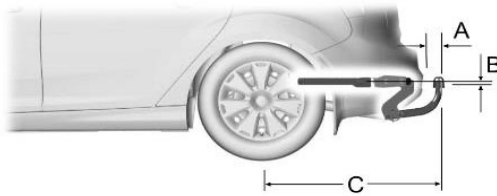
Towing a Trailer

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
Battery Electric Vehicle.	75 (165)

Note: You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



E132737

Towing a Trailer

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball. ¹	89 (3.5)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball. ²	74 (2.9)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	34 (1.3)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	837 (33.0)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	525 (20.7)
E	Distance between side members.	1,049 (41.3)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	355 (14.0)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	703 (27.7)

¹Excluding: ST Line.

²ST Line.

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

BREAKING-IN - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

BREAKING-IN - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

Driving Hints

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

ELECTRIC VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

Note: *Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.*

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle by using departure and comfort settings to warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. See **Charging Settings** (page 192).

Note: *You can also access departure and comfort settings using the Ford app.*

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

Driving Hints

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

If the driver side floor mat is not securely fastened, remove it, and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Do not drive with a loose floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting vapors from the high-voltage battery are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Apply the electric parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.



WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.



WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.



WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.



WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

Note: This procedure is only for the 12 volt battery.

Note: Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

Note: Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

Note: Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

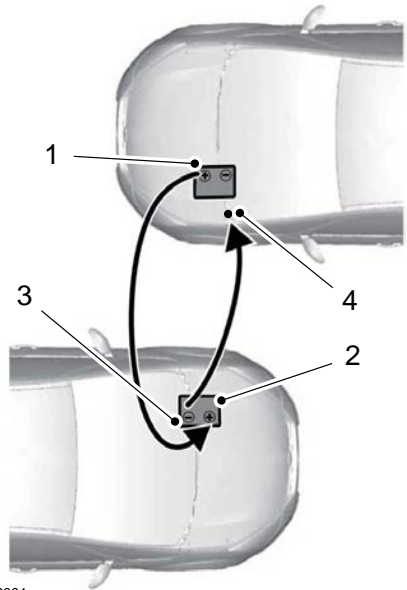
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Note: In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.

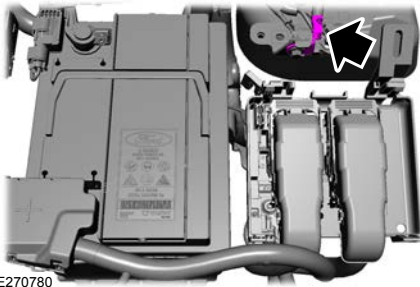


E142664

Switch off the engine the disabled vehicle and any electrical equipment.

1. Connect the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative cable to a ground connection point if available.

Crash and Breakdown Information



E270780

5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and press the accelerator gently to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
7. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

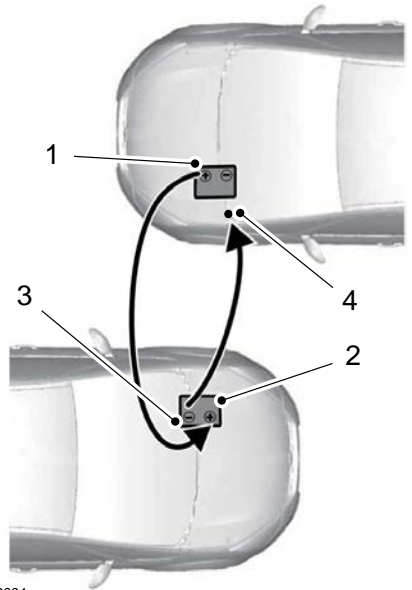
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Note: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts.

Note: In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.

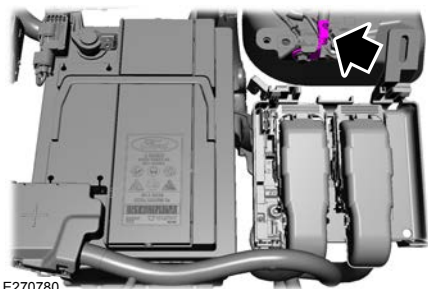


E142664

Switch off the disabled vehicle and any electrical equipment.

1. Connect the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle, or connect the negative cable to a ground connection point if available.

Crash and Breakdown Information



E270780

5. Switch on the booster vehicle and press the accelerator gently.
6. Switch on the disabled vehicle.
7. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicles for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

Crash and Breakdown Information

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system deactivates the high voltage system in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

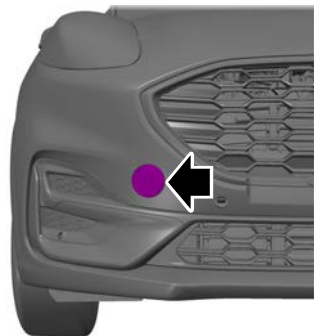
RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch your vehicle off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



The front towing point is on the right-hand side of the front bumper.

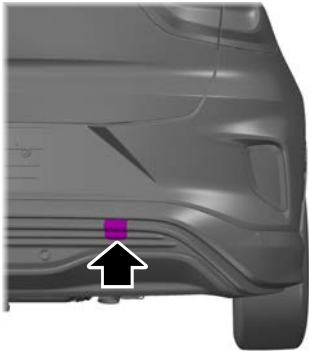
To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the right side of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover on the left side and pull it straight out.

Note: *The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT



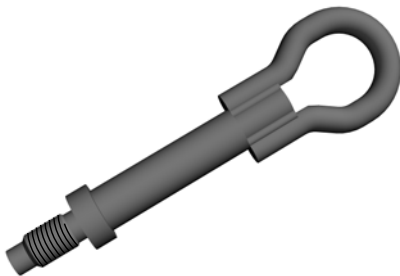
The rear towing point is on the right-hand side of the rear bumper.

To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

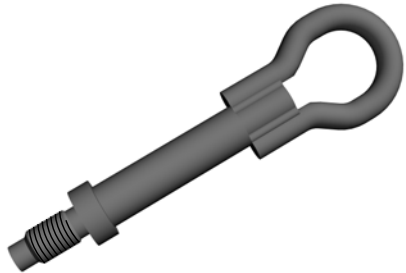
LOCATING THE TOWING EYE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



The towing eye is in the storage tray, under the hood.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.



LOCATING THE TOWING EYE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV), AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/MANUAL TRANSMISSION



The towing eye is in the left-hand side rear storage compartment.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE

-  **WARNING:** Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.
-  **WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

Crash and Breakdown Information



E292787

1. Push the cover.
2. Carefully remove the cover.

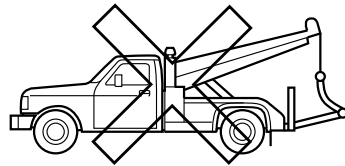
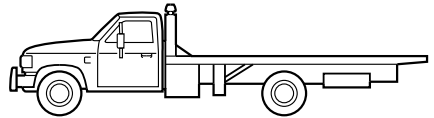
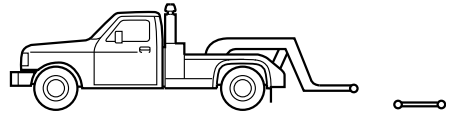


E292904

3. Install the recovery hook.

Note: It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

Crash and Breakdown Information

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

Crash and Breakdown Information

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch Emergency Tow on.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Switching Emergency Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 150).

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 122).

3. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
4. Select Settings.
5. Select Vehicle Settings.
6. Select Emergency Tow.
7. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
8. Press and hold the brake pedal.
9. Shift into neutral (N).
10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Emergency Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

3. Apply the electric parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 224).

Note: *A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display and the electric parking brake lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *If your vehicle has an anti-theft alarm, make sure you switch perimeter sensing on when towing. See **Setting the Alarm Security Level** (page 78).*

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 122).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position N.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Recovery Towing** (page 349).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Emergency Equipment

STORING A FIRST AID KIT - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

You can store a first aid kit in the luggage compartment.

STORING A FIRST AID KIT - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You can store a first aid kit in the luggage compartment or in the frunk.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

You can store a warning triangle in the luggage compartment.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You can store a warning triangle in the luggage compartment or in the frunk.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

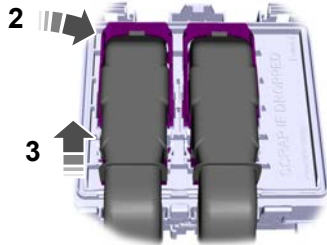


E266225

ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

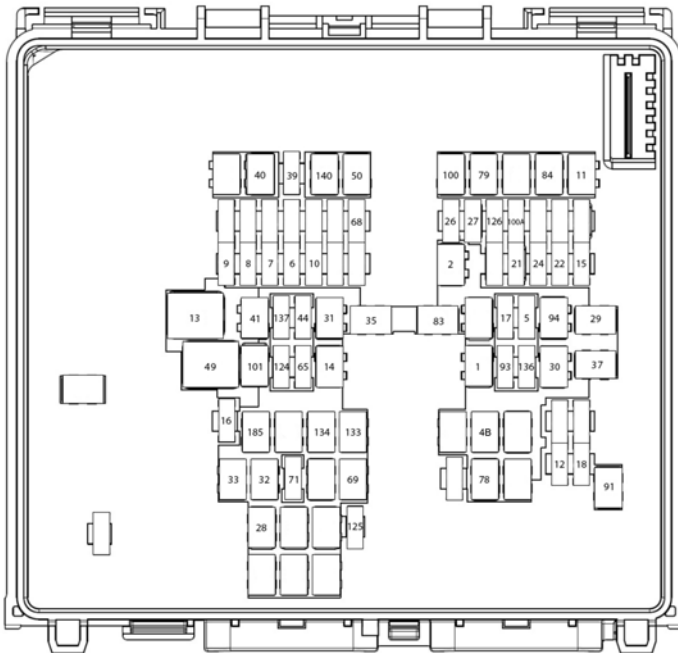
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX - MILDHYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)



Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4B	20 A	Fuel pump.
5	10 A	Diagnostic connector.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
7	10 A	Powertrain control module.
8	15 A	Powertrain control module.
9	20 A	Powertrain control module.
10	10 A	Powertrain control module.
11	30 A	Starter motor.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
14	40 A	Trailer tow 2.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	15 A	Rear window washer pump.
17	5 A	Lumbar.
18	10 A	Battery electronic control module. Battery charging control module.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling motor.
22	10 A	Electronic power assist steering.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module.
26	10 A	Transmission control module.
27	10 A	Electronic stability control ignition feed.
28	40 A	Electronic stability control valve. Integrated park brake.
29	60 A	Electronic stability control pump.
30	25 A	Driver seat module. Driver power seat.

Fuses

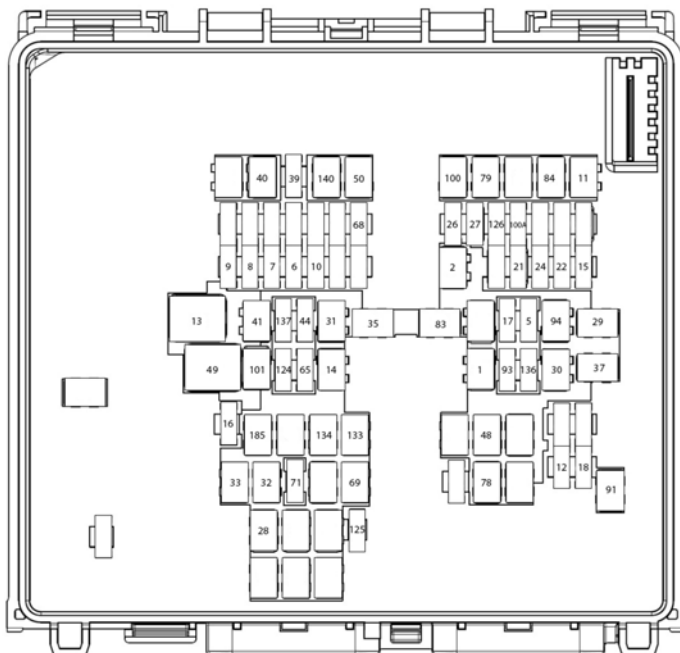
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
31	25 A	Passenger seat module. Passenger power seat.
32	20 A	Not used.
33	20 A	Not used.
39	15 A	Dual Clutch Transmission.
40	60 A	Dual Clutch Transmission.
41	30 A	Power liftgate. Trunk module.
44	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
49	60 A	Cooling fan 1.
50	30 A	Heated backlight.
65	10 A	Transmission control module.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wipers.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper.
78	40 A	Left front window defroster.
79	40 A	Right-hand window defroster.
83	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater.
84	60 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater.
91	40 A	Trailer tow.
93	5 A	Headlamp switch.
94	20 A	Heated seats.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamp.
100A	5 A	Headlamp control module.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamp.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
125	5 A	USB port.
126	20 A	Advance driver assistance system.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
133	30 A	Rear left-hand door control module.
134	30 A	Rear right-hand door control module.
136	15 A	Amplifier.
137	15 A	Amplifier.
140	40 A	Cooling fan 2.
185	20 A	Glassroof.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4B	20 A	Not used.
5	10 A	Diagnostic connector.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
7	10 A	Not used.
8	10 A	Electric air conditioning compressor.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
9	20 A	Not used.
10	10 A	Not used.
11	30 A	Starter motor.
12	10 A	Not used.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
14	60 A	Trailer tow 2.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	15 A	Rear window washer pump.
17	5 A	Lumbar.
18	10 A	Battery electronic control module. Battery charging control module.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling motor.
22	10 A	Electronic power assist steering.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module.
26	10 A	Hybrid power distribution box signal.
27	10 A	Electronic stability control ignition feed.
28	60 A	Electronic stability control valve. Integrated park brake.
29	60 A	Brake system control module pump.
30	25 A	Driver seat module. Driver power seat.
31	25 A	Passenger seat module. Passenger power seat.
32	20 A	Not used.
33	20 A	Not used.
35	60 A	Hybrid power distribution box.
37	40 A	Park by brake.
39	15 A	Not used.

Fuses

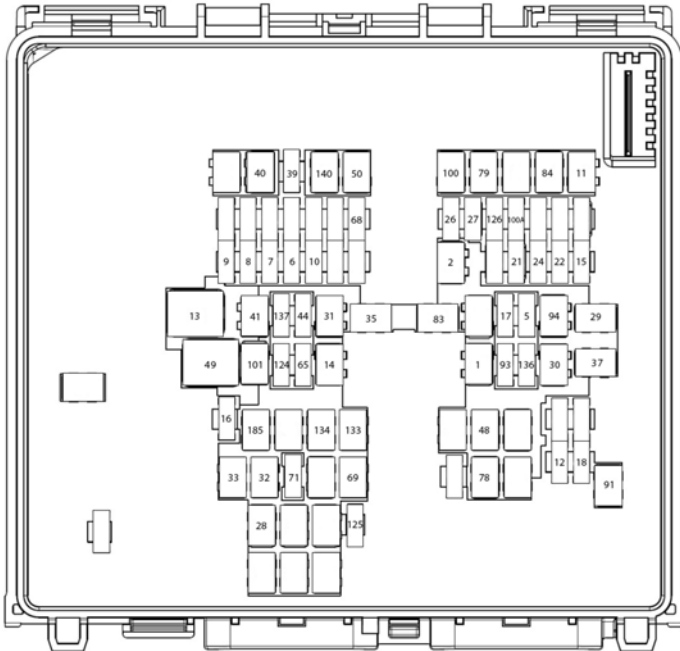
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
40	60 A	Not used.
41	30 A	Power liftgate. Trunk module.
44	5 A	Charge port.
49	60 A	Cooling fan 1.
50	30 A	Heated backlight.
65	5 A	Battery energy control module.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wipers.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper.
78	40 A	Left front window defroster.
79	40 A	Right-hand window defroster.
83	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 1.
84	60 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 2.
91	40 A	Trailer tow.
93	5 A	Headlamp switch.
94	20 A	Heated seats.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamp.
100A	5 A	Headlamp control module.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamp.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
125	5 A	USB port.
126	20 A	Advance driver assistance system.
133	30 A	Rear left-hand door control module.
134	30 A	Rear right-hand door control module.
136	15 A	Amplifier.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
137	15 A	Amplifier.
140	40 A	Not used.
185	20 A	Glass roof.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4B	20 A	Not used.
5	10 A	Diagnostic connector.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
7	10 A	Not used.
8	10 A	Electric air conditioning compressor.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
9	20 A	Not used.
10	10 A	Not used.
11	30 A	Not used.
12	10 A	Not used.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
14	60 A	Trailer tow 2.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	15 A	Rear window washer pump.
17	5 A	Lumbar.
18	10 A	Battery electronic control module. Battery charging control module.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling motor.
22	10 A	Electronic power assist steering.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module.
26	10 A	Hybrid power distribution box signal.
27	10 A	Electronic stability control ignition feed.
28	60 A	Electronic stability control valve. Integrated park brake.
29	60 A	Brake system control module pump.
30	25 A	Driver seat module. Driver power seat.
31	25 A	Passenger seat module. Passenger power seat.
32	20 A	Not used.
33	20 A	Not used.
35	60 A	Hybrid power distribution box.
37	40 A	Park by brake.
39	15 A	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
40	60 A	Not used.
41	30 A	Power liftgate. Trunk module.
44	5 A	Charge port.
49	60 A	Cooling fan 1.
50	30 A	Heated backlight.
65	5 A	Battery energy control module.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wipers.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper.
78	40 A	Left front window defroster.
79	40 A	Right-hand window defroster.
83	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 1.
84	60 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 2.
91	40 A	Trailer tow.
93	5 A	Headlamp switch.
94	20 A	Heated seats.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamp.
100A	5 A	Headlamp control module.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamp.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
125	5 A	USB port.
126	20 A	Advance driver assistance system.
133	30 A	Rear left-hand door control module.
134	30 A	Rear right-hand door control module.
136	15 A	Amplifier.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
137	15 A	Amplifier.
140	40 A	Not used.
185	20 A	Glass roof.

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - LHD

The fuse box is behind the glove compartment.

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - RHD

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

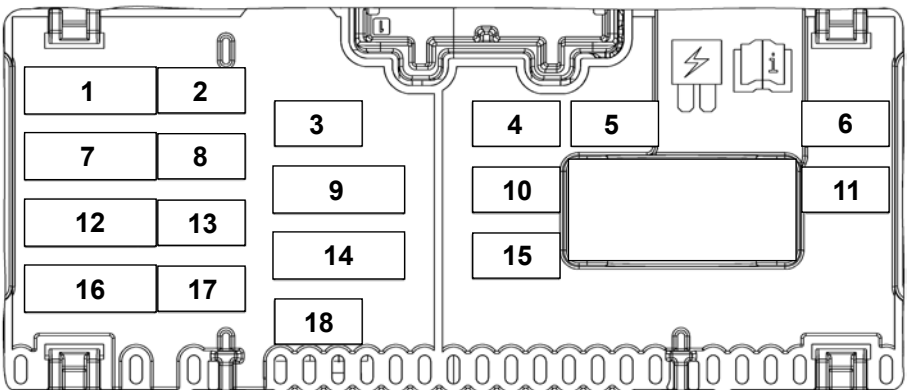
ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - LHD

1. Open the glove compartment and empty the contents.
2. Turn the retaining clips and remove them.
3. Press the sides inward and swivel the glove compartment downward.

ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - RHD

1. Carefully remove the cover below the glove compartment.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

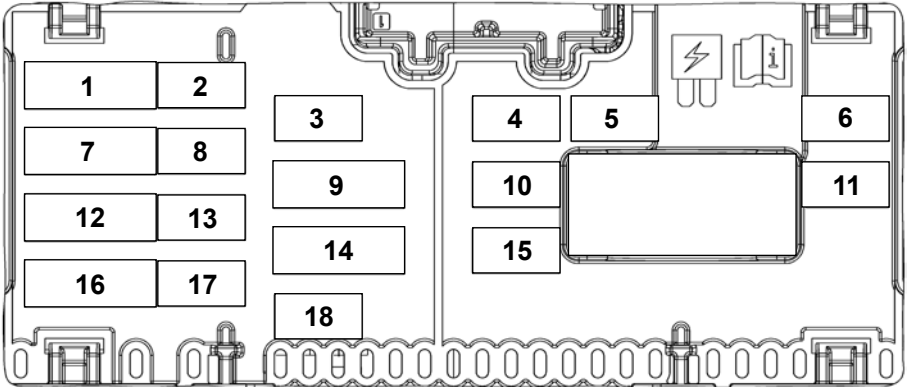


Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	10 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Enhanced Central Gateway. Integrated Control Panel. Display Navigation.
4	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
5	10 A	Glassroof.
6	30 A	Right-hand front power windows.
7	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
8	10 A	Instrument Cluster Display.
9	5 A	Central security module. Hands-free liftgate. Power liftgate.
10	15 A	Double Lock. Driver door lock. Fuel filler door.
11	30 A	Left-hand front power windows.
12	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
13	15 A	Voice control. SYNC.
14	7.5 A	Telematic Embedded Modem. Wireless charging module. Driver monitor system.
15	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
16	7.5 A	Climate control. Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Push button ignition switch.
17	20 A	Audio unit.
18	20 A	Battery back-up sounder.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

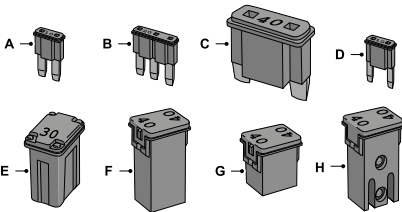


Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	10 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Enhanced Central Gateway. Integrated Control Panel. Display Navigation.
4	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
5	10 A	Glass roof.
6	30 A	Right-hand front power windows.
7	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror. Pedestrian alert system.
8	10 A	Instrument Cluster Display.
9	5 A	Central security module. Hands-free liftgate. Power liftgate.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
10	15 A	Double Lock. Driver door lock. Fuel filler door.
11	30 A	Left-hand front power windows.
12	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
13	15 A	Voice control. SYNC.
14	7.5 A	Telematic Embedded Modem. Wireless charging module. Driver monitor system.
15	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
16	7.5 A	Climate control. Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Push button ignition switch.
17	20 A	Audio unit.
18	20 A	Battery back-up sounder.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.
C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.

F	J Case.
G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

Fuses

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

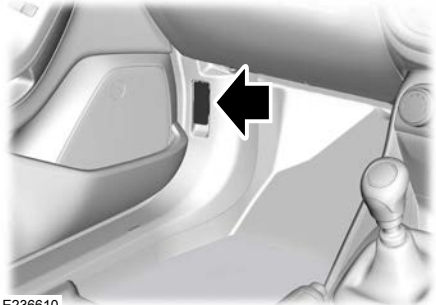
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

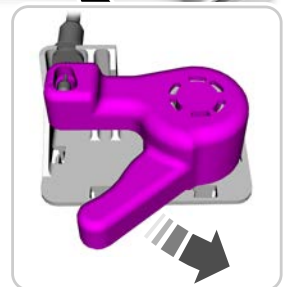
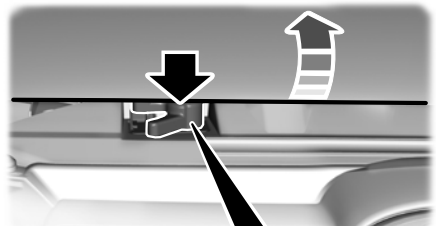
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



E236610

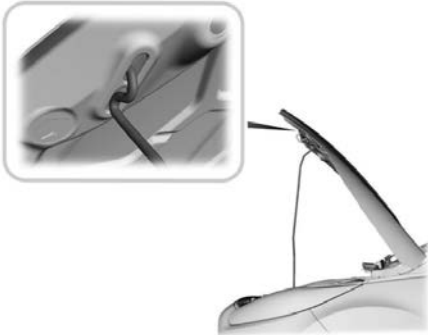
1. Pull the hood release lever.



E189028

2. Slightly lift the hood. Move the lever toward the center of your vehicle to release the hood.

Maintenance



3. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

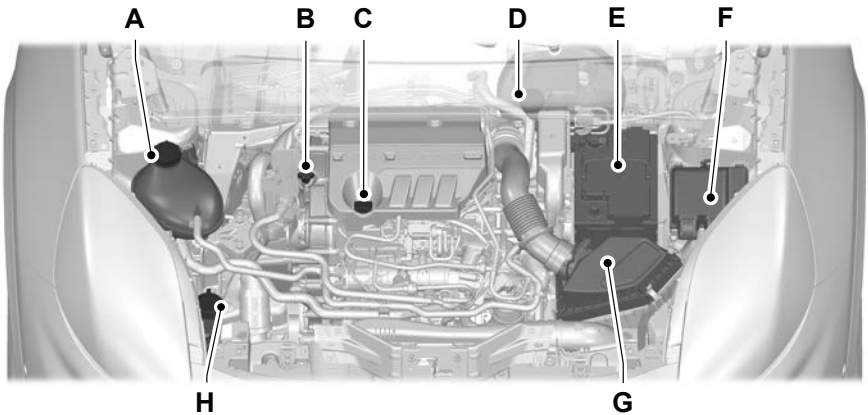
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

E87786

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV), LHD

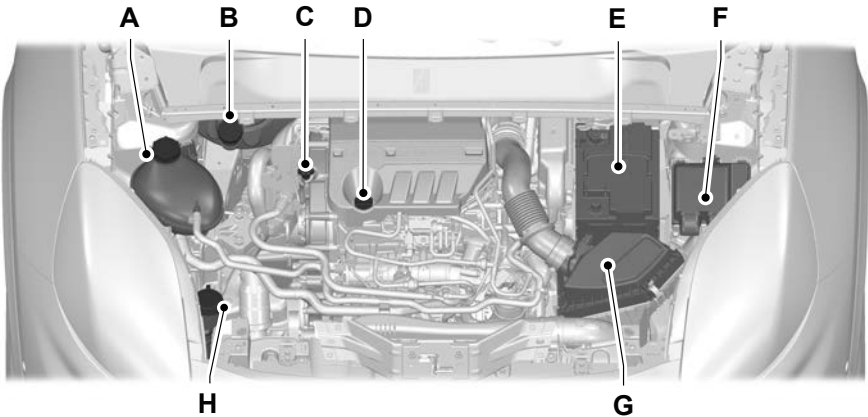


- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 382).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 380).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 380).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 218).

Maintenance

- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 391).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 359).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 86).

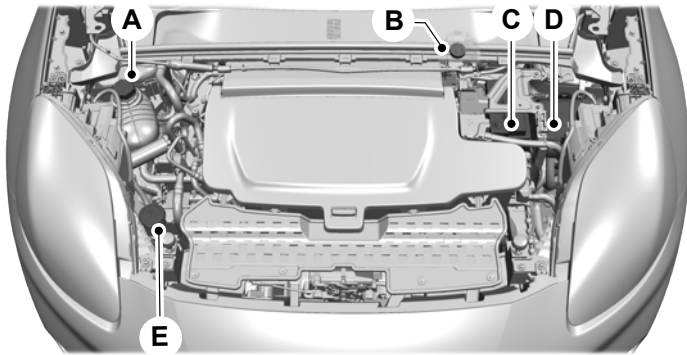
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV), RHD



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 382).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 218).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 380).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 380).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 391).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 359).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washers** (page 86).

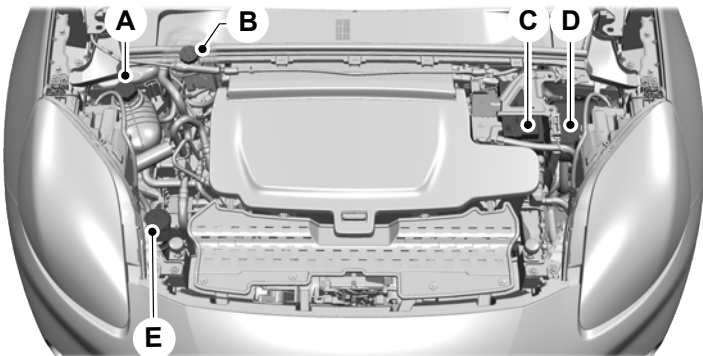
Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, LHD



- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 382).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 218).
- C 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 392).
- D Under hood fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 359).
- E Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 86).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, RHD

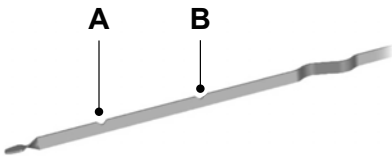


Maintenance

- A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 382).
- B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 218).
- C 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 392).
- D Under hood fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 359).
- E Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 86).

ENGINE OIL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.*

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).*

Note: *Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.*

Note: *If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 381).

4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	4.52 L (0.99 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1 L (0.22 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C954-A1

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C954-A1, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C6.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.11 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE COOLING FAN





Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Maintenance

COOLANT - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.


When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.


Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.


Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT


 **WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

 **WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

 **WARNING:** Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 384). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 384). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 384).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Maintenance

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The

amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 352).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Maintenance

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Engine coolant over temperature Stop Safely Now	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 382).

COOLANT - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the electric motor is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Maintenance

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the electric motor cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 388). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionized or distilled water. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 388). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

Maintenance

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 388).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without coolant, can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the electric motor is overheating, the vehicle could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone a message appears in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced electric motor power in order to manage the coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 352).

Maintenance

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the electric motor from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the temperature warning or stop safely messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Leave the vehicle powered on until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
4. Power the vehicle off and wait for it to cool.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
7. If the coolant level is normal, restart the vehicle and continue.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: *Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.*

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the electric motor or high voltage battery begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

Maintenance

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
Stop Safely Now	Displays when the coolant or high voltage battery temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, power the vehicle off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Managing the Coolant Temperature (page 387).
Limited performance due to hot battery	Displays if your vehicle has limited performance due to a hot high voltage battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Severely limited performance due to hot battery	

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

Maintenance



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.



WARNING: For vehicles equipped with a 12V battery vent tube, always properly reconnect the vent tube to the battery after disconnecting. Failure to follow this instruction could allow harmful gasses to enter the vehicle cabin, which could cause personal injury or death.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.

- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

Maintenance

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 376).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

Note: *There may be additional components that need to be removed or disconnected before you can safely remove the battery from your vehicle. For specific guidance on which components may need to be addressed, it is best to contact your dealer for detailed information.*

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: *Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.*

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 101).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery cable terminals, battery terminal covers, battery vent tube, battery securing clamp and battery cover.*

Maintenance

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY - TURKEY

DEPOZİTOLUDUR



DİKKAT!

- Atık akümülatörünüzün içindeki asitli sıvıyı toprağa, suya, kanalizasyona dökmeyiniz.
- Atık akümülatörünüzün plastik kısımlarını soba ve kazanlarda yakmayınız.
- Atık akümülatörleri çocuklardan uzak tutunuz.

FİRMA KODU: 004
FİRMA KODU: 220

Geri Kazanılır

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 170).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Message	Action
12V battery malfunction Service soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric range reduced due to position/hazard lamps on while vehicle off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical system drain Service required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE/MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system malfunction Service soon Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system malfunction Service now Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
12V battery low Charge by driving Steering and brake assist limited	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 346). See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 347). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Maintenance

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and do provide quality bulb illumination time.

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Front turn signal lamp.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamp.	LED.	-
Headlamp low beam.	LED.	-
Headlamp high beam.	LED.	-
Mirror turn signal lamp.	WY5W.	5
Rear lamp and stop lamp.	LED.	-
High mounted stop lamp.	LED.	-
Rear turn signal lamp.	WY16W.	16
Rear fog lamp.	P21W.	21
Reversing lamp.	W16W.	16
License plate lamp.	LED.	-

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

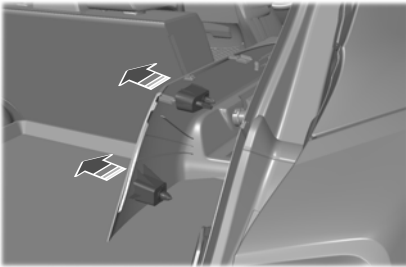
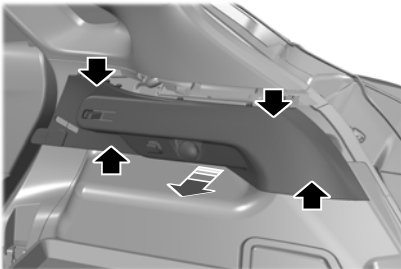
REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Stoplamp, Rear Lamp and Rear Turn Signal Lamp

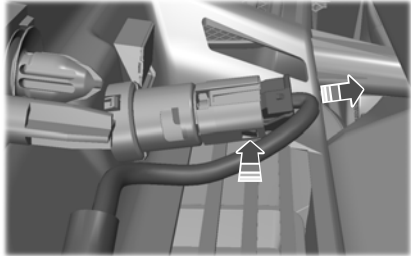
1. Fold the seat backrest forward. See **Folding the Seat Backrest** (page 132).
2. Remove the package tray.



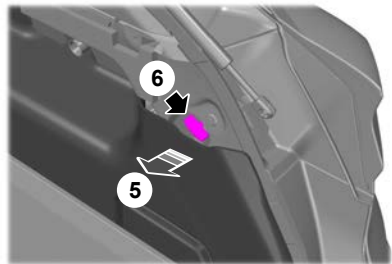
3. Firmly pull the package tray support panel at the four fixing points to unclip the package tray support panel.

Note: Use a screwdriver to gently lift the panel.

Note: You cannot fully remove the package tray support panel until you disconnect the 12V power outlet socket.



4. Disconnect the 12V power outlet socket by pressing the clip and fully remove the package tray support panel.



5. Pull the side soft trim panel to access the lamp release spring loaded fastener.
6. Turn the spring loaded fastener counterclockwise to release the lamp.

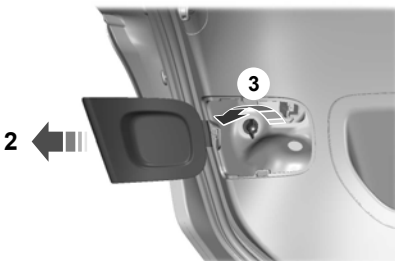
Note: You cannot fully remove the spring loaded fastener.

Maintenance



7. Remove the lamp.
8. Disconnect the electrical connector.
9. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reversing Lamp





1. Open the liftgate.
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.



4. Remove the lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR FOG LAMP BULB

 **WARNING:** Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

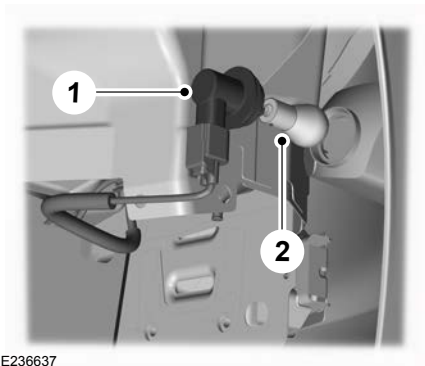
 **WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 395).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Access the underside of your vehicle behind the rear wheel.

Maintenance



E236637

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A MIRROR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



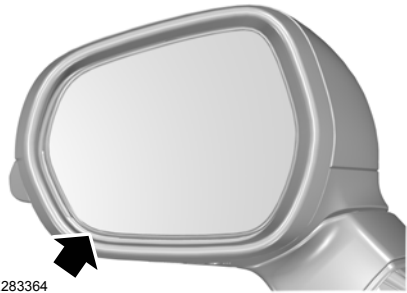
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

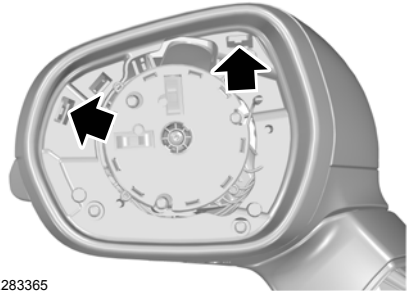
Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 395).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E283364

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully lever the mirror glass from the lower outer edge and remove it.
2. Unplug the connector from the rear side of the glass.



E283365

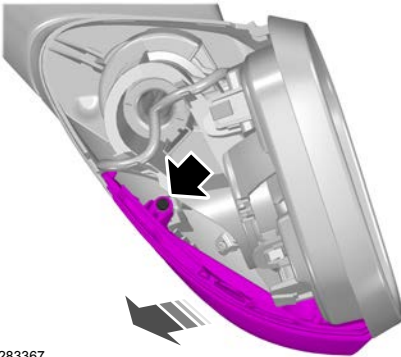
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully press the two housing cover clips and release them.

Maintenance



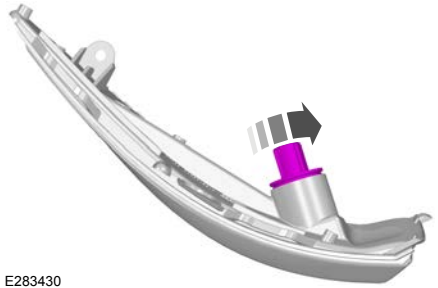
E283366

4. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to push the housing cover through the access hole and remove it.



E283367

5. Use a T10 Torx screwdriver to remove the lamp body.



E283430

6. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
7. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that both mirror housing cover clips lock into position.

CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

⚠ WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

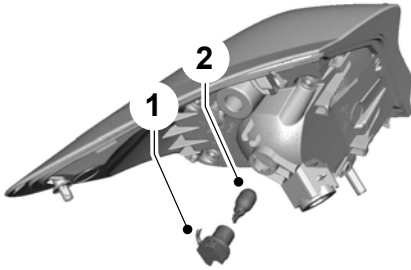
⚠ WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 395).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 396).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

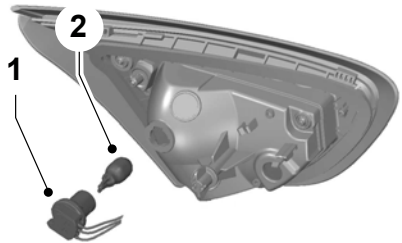
Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Vanity mirror lamp.	T5.	1.3

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 395).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 396).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

CHANGING THE ILLUMINATED SCUFF PLATE BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



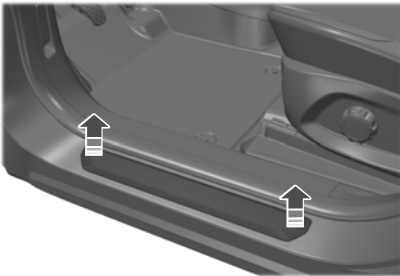
CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The scuff plate uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2430.

1. Open the front door.



2. Carefully lift the edges of the scuff plate.

Note: By sticking adhesive tapes next to the edges of the scuff plate, you can mark its correct location for easier alignment during reinstall.



3. Remove the battery caps from the bottom of the scuff plate.



4. Remove the batteries.
5. Insert new batteries with the + facing upward.
6. Replace the battery caps.
7. Reinstall the scuff plate by pressing the edges.

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST (92KW/125PS) (B7), MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Engine	1.0L EcoBoost™
Bore.	71.9 mm (2.8 in)
Stroke.	82 mm (3.2 in)
Capacity.	999 cm ³ (61 in ³)
Compression ratio.	10.5:1
Firing order.	1-2-3

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST (114KW/155PS) (BZ)/1.0L ECOBOOST (118KW/160PS) (Q0), MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

Dimension Description	Dimension
Bore.	71.9 mm (2.8 in)
Stroke.	82 mm (3.2 in)
Capacity.	999 cm ³ (61 in ³)
Compression ratio.	10:1
Firing order.	1-2-3
Fuel type.	95 RON Octane

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,186–4,225 (164.8–166.3)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,930 (76.0)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,520–1,560 (59.8–61.4)
Wheelbase.	2,588 (101.9)
Front track.	1,562–1,567 (61.5–61.7)
Rear track.	1,518–1,523 (59.8–60.0)

Vehicle Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.



WARNING: The air conditioning

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R-1234yf.

Variant	Global Warming Potential	CO ₂ Equivalent
All.	0.50 ¹	0.00025 t

¹GWP 4(GB)

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.49 kg (17.3 oz)	120 cm ³ (4.1 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

Vehicle Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.



WARNING: The air conditioning

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R-1234yf.

Variant	Global Warming Potential	CO ₂ Equivalent
All.	0.501 ¹	0.00026 t

¹GWP 4(GB)

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.52 kg (18.3 oz)	160 -0/+15 cm ³ (5.4 -0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

Track Use

TRACK USE PRECAUTIONS

Before using your vehicle on a track, check the engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 380).

Maintain the engine oil level at or near the maximum mark on the engine oil dipstick when using your vehicle on a track.

In manual shifting mode the transmission does not switch gear automatically when you reach the engine's speed limit.

Note: *This feature is intended for track use, use with caution.*

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.*

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Vehicle Care

Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.*

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: *Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Suspension and steering components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.*

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

Vehicle Care

2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

Note: *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations makes sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for longer than 30 days the battery state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend to disconnect the 12v battery to reduce system loads on the battery, or you can use a trickle charger for longer storage periods.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Storing Your Vehicle

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.
- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

Note: *If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires. See **Using Summer Tires** (page 422).*

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake fully release.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Storing Your Vehicle

Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

Note: *Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and doors closed for at least five minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.*

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Storing Your Vehicle

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10- minute drive to clean any corrosion from the brakes.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

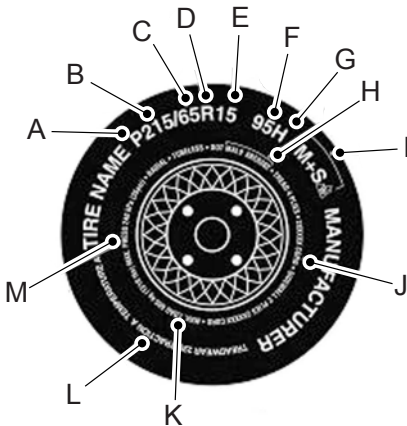
Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h (81 mph)
N	140 km/h (87 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. Tire Identification Number (TIN): A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

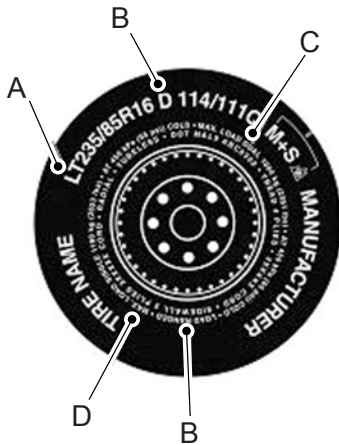
Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. LT: Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation

Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

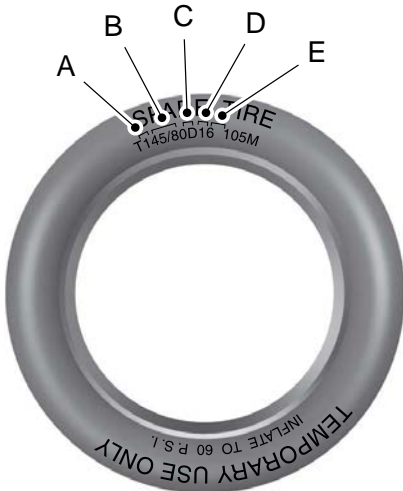
D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. T: Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. 145: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. 80: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. D: Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

Wheel and Tire Information

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424).

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Wheel and Tire Information



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 215/55R17.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 7 mm (0.3 in).

Note: *Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).*

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

Note: *We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236). See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 236).*

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 424).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

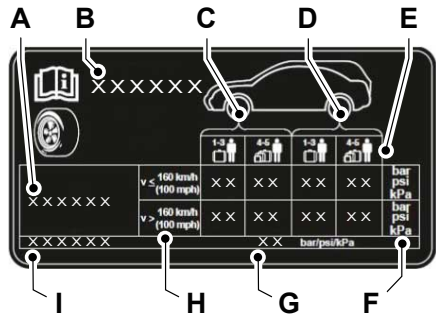
Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV), EXCLUDING: ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every month.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.

Tire Care

- E Vehicle load. H Intended constant vehicle speed.
 F Measure unit. I Spare wheel tire size.
 G Spare wheel tire pressure.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55R17 94V All Season	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/55 R17 98W All season	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/55 R17 94V Summer	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
215/55R17 98W Summer	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
215/50R18 92V	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/50R18 96V	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
225/40R19 93V ¹	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
225/40R19 93V ²	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.5 (36)	2.6 (38)

¹ Vehicles with manual transmission.

² Vehicles with automatic transmission.

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/70R16	4.2 (61)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

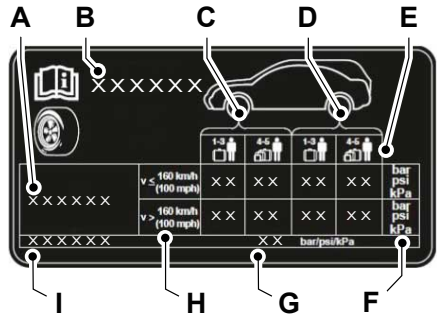
Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, EXCLUDING: ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55R17 94V All Season	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/55 R17 98W All season	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/55 R17 94V Summer	2.6 (38)	2.5 (36)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/55R17 98W Summer	2.6 (38)	2.5 (36)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)

Tire Care

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/50R18 92V	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
215/50R18 96V	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.7 (39)	2.9 (42)
225/40R19 93V	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

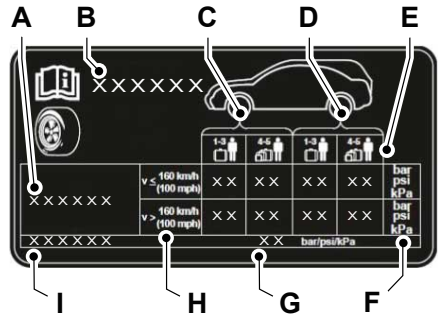
Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
225/40 R19 93Y XL	2.2 (32)	1.8 (26)	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)
215/55 R17 98W	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)

Tire Care

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
225/40 R19 93Y XL	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	2.4 (35)
215/55 R17 98W	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

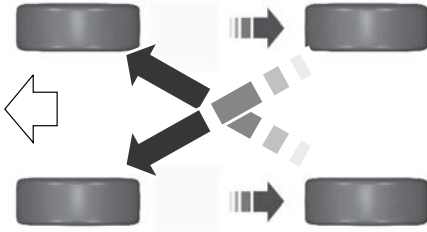
Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

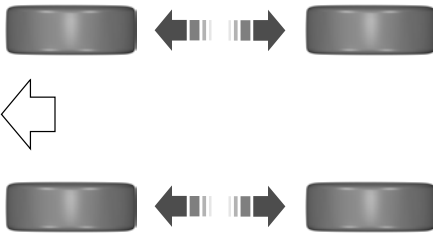
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Tire Care

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40°C (-40°F) and 70°C (157.9°F).

The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

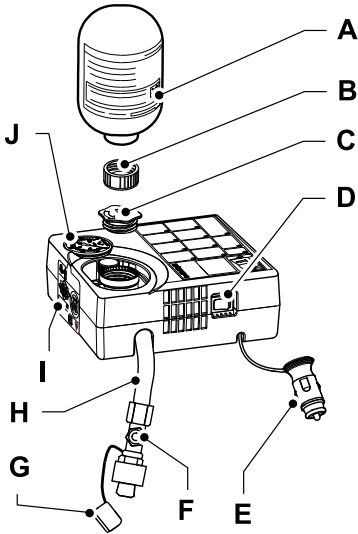
The kit is in the left-hand side rear storage compartment or in the language area.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The kit is in the storage tray, under the hood.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

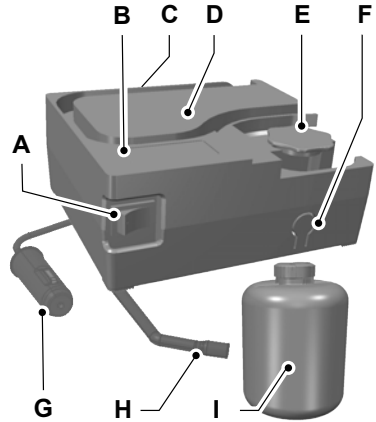
TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS- VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 07/2026



- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Sealant bottle access cap.
- D Power switch.
- E 12-volt DC power point connector.
- F Pressure release valve.
- G Protective cap.
- H Tire inflation pipe.
- I Warning Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS- VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 08/2026



- A Power Switch.
- B Pressure Gauge.
- C Warning Label.
- D Operating Instruction.
- E Sealant Bottle Access Cap.
- F Pressure Release Valve.
- G 12-volt DC Power Point Connector
- H Tire Inflation Pipe.
- I Sealant Bottle.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 07/2026



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

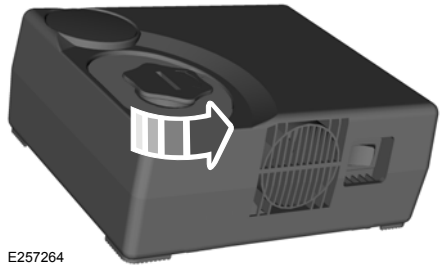
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



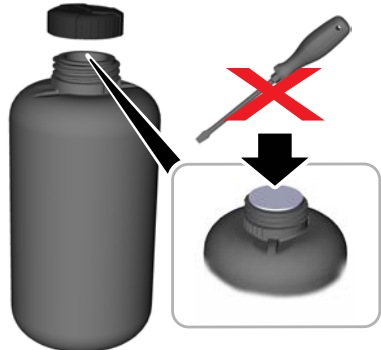
E257263

2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12-volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

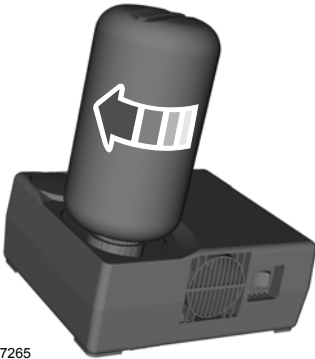
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.

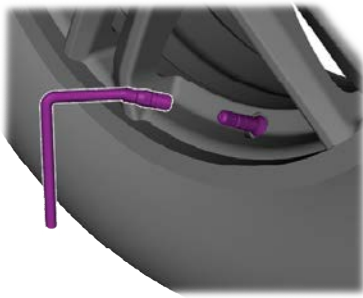
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

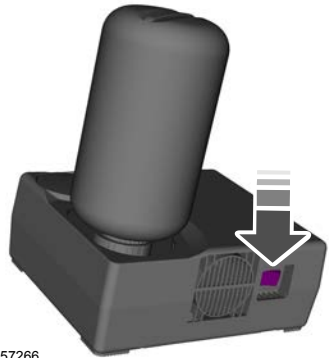
Note: Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.




6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



7. Plug the 12-volt DC power point connector into the 12-volt DC socket. See **Power Outlet** (page 139).
8. Start the engine.



E257266

 **WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

- Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi) as shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).

Note: If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

- When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).
- Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12-volt DC power point connector.

Note: Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

- Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
- Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



- Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



16. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26.1 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.*

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

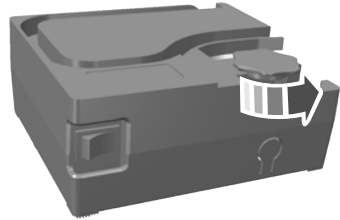
USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT - VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 08/2026



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

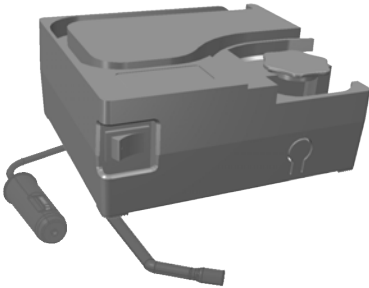


WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



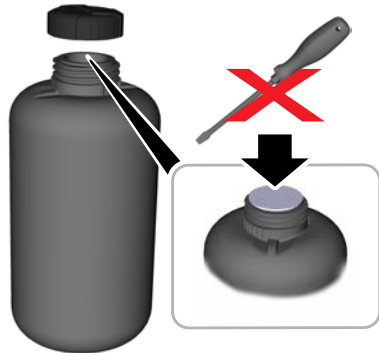
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12-volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.

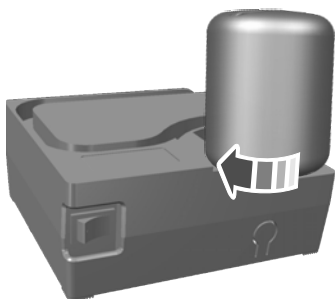
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

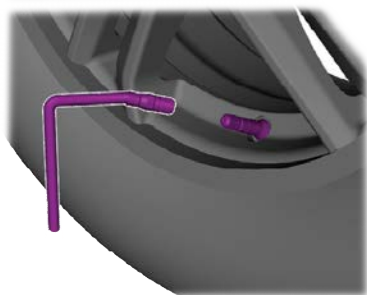
4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

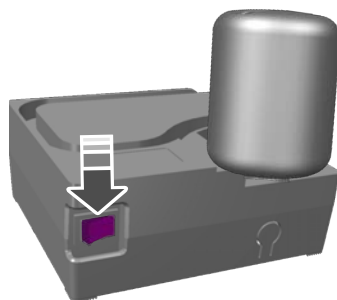
Note: Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.




6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



7. Plug the 12-volt DC power point connector into the 12-volt DC socket. See **Power Outlet** (page 139).
8. Start the engine.



 **WARNING:** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

- Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi) as shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).

Note: If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

- When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and your vehicle off. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).

- Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12-volt DC power point connector.

Note: Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

- Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
- Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.



- Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



- After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 424). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 426). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 428).

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26.1 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.*

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

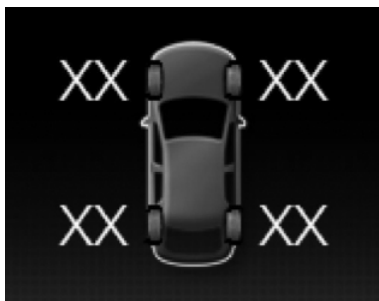
The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre Pressure**.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre Pressure**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly underinflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Specifications (page 426). See Tire Pressure Specifications (page 424). See Tire Pressure Specifications (page 428). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tyre Pressure Low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre Pressure Monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse (R) gear, apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Note: Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, the intent of the spare wheel is for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels originally provided.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

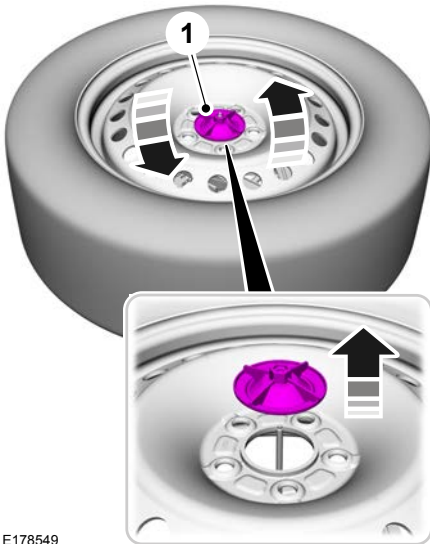
Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.

Note: The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.

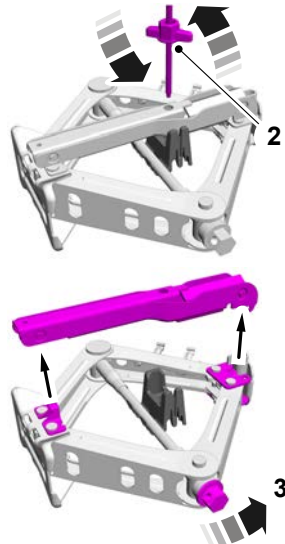
The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

Changing a Road Wheel



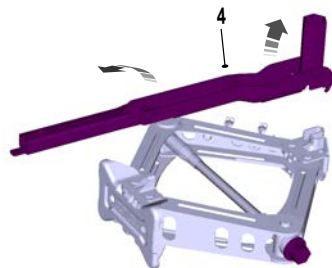
E178549

1. Turn the spare wheel securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw clockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.




E245204


Changing a Road Wheel


4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.

Note: Use the hook at the hexagonal end to remove the wheel trim.


Vehicle Jack

 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

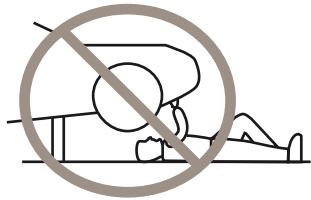
 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.


 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

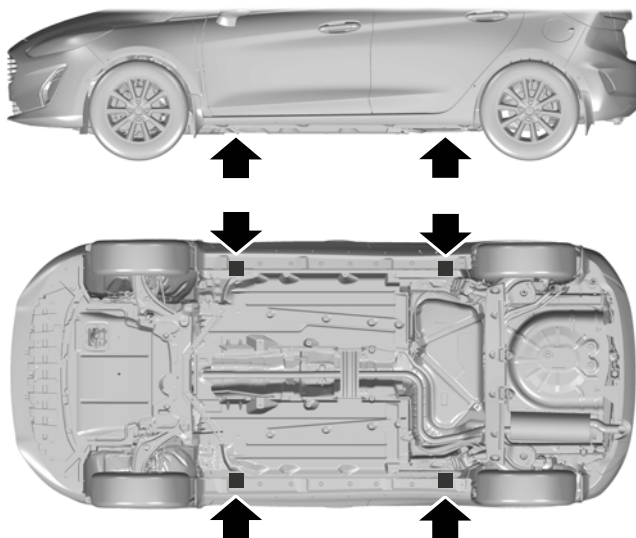
 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



Jacking and Lifting Points

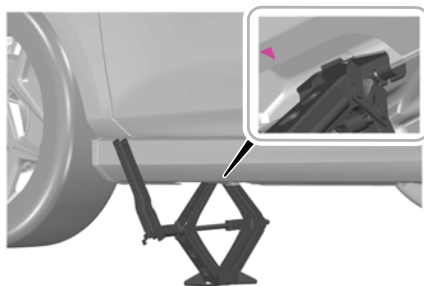
 **WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

Changing a Road Wheel



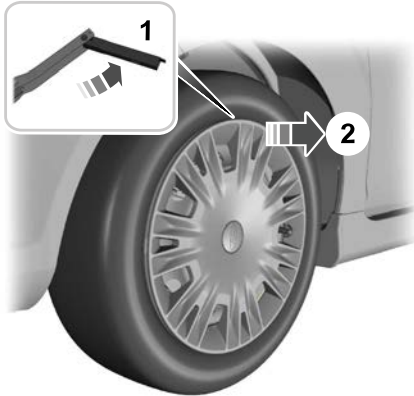
Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

All Vehicles



Changing a Road Wheel

Removing the Wheel Trim

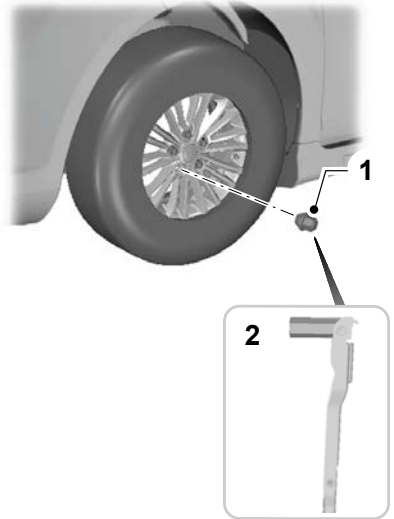


E285279

1. Unfold the lug nut wrench.
2. Use the tongue on the lug nut wrench to remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

Installing a Road Wheel

- WARNING:** Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.
- WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

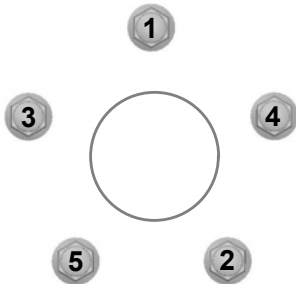
Changing a Road Wheel

WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E75442

4. Install all of the lug nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.

5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 445).
7. Install the wheel trim.

WHEEL NUTS

WARNING: Only use the specific wheel nuts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Nm (lb.ft)
135 (100)

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Changing a Road Wheel



A Wheel pilot bore.

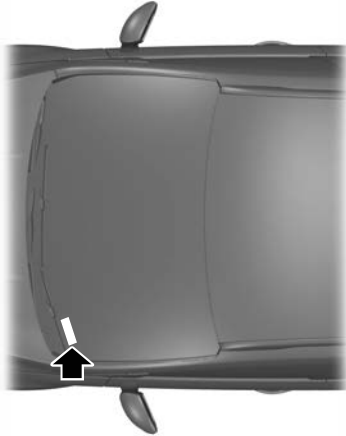
Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Vehicle Identification

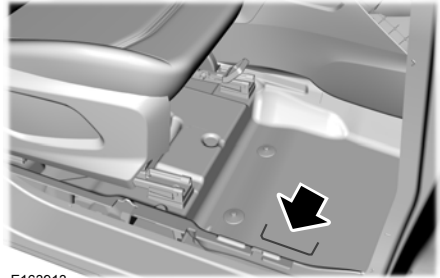
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



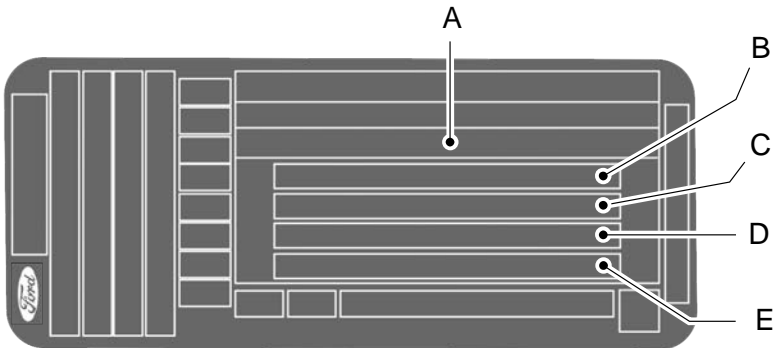
Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



Vehicle Identification

- A Vehicle identification number.
- B Gross vehicle weight.
- C Gross train weight.
- D Maximum front axle weight.
- E Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING THE FORD APP TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the Ford app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your Ford app account.
6. Confirm that Ford app account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is my Ford app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Connected Vehicle

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Frequency Band**.
6. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the vehicle hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure the vehicle hotspot is switched on.
- Make sure hidden network is switched off under the hotspot security menu.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

What should I do if my phone shows "No internet connection" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Check the status of your data plan.
- If your subscription is active, try moving the vehicle to an open area to improve reception.

What should I do if my phone shows "This network is operating on Wi-Fi channels in use by several other nearby networks" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Restart your vehicle.
- Move your vehicle to a different location.
- In the vehicle hotspot settings, switch between the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused.*

Note: *In case the source is not paused audio is muted.*



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

Note: *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



E391071

Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

Audio System

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

You may find the presets in a line at the bottom of the touchscreen when you open the radio screen. Your vehicle comes with a list of presets. Press and hold any preset to store a new radio station and override an existing preset.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

Note: You can mute the audio system by decreasing the volume to 0.


SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

-  Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
- Press **Sound settings**.
- Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Clock settings**.
- Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Clock settings**.
- Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Audio System

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List



Press this icon on the touchscreen to view available stations.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Display**.
3. Press **Calm screen** to switch the display off.
4. Press the touchscreen to switch the display back on.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List



Press this icon on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

For some features, the vehicle has to be stand-still with applied park brake (manual transmission) or shifted to park (P) (automatic transmission).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Note: Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.

Center Display Overview



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 479).

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

Note: *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

Voice Interaction

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.



You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Press **Voice Command Help**.
4. Press a menu option on the list for the relevant examples.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle is added to your Ford app account.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing are enabled.

Note: *Support and functionality may vary based on the country where your Ford app account is registered.*

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.

5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

Alexa Built-In

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.
4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.
Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.*
3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.
Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*
4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.
Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.*
5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.*

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Calls

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favourites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: *Up to 12 devices can be stored.*

Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Calls	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.



Press this icon to accept the call.

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.



Press this icon to reject the call.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the name of the contact or phone number displays on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:



Press this icon to access the phone keypad.



You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.



Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.



Immediately end a phone call.

Note: You can also end the call by pressing the button on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

Bluetooth®

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.

3. Press **Sources**.

4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Apps

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®**.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Access the system applications.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **Mobile Apps** are enabled.*

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Apps

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
- 4.



Press this icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

Switching Android Auto On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
- 4.



Press this icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Navigation

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit ford.com/connectedservices.

Note: *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

Access navigation by pressing the map on the touchscreen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update the Map data, you need to have a connected navigation subscription and your vehicle modem must be enabled. See **Connected Navigation** (page 474). See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 454).

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to <https://mapcreator.here.com/>.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the touchscreen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press the search button on the keyboard.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press the map on the touchscreen to place a pin at a location.
2. Press the bar at the bottom of the screen to show more information about the location of the pin.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the touchscreen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the recents button.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the favorites button.
3. Select a saved destination.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Note: *Press the star icon when viewing location details to save the location.*

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press the search button on the top of the touchscreen.
2. Press Explore.
3. Press a menu item from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Note: *You may also press a point of interest icon on the map to set it as your destination.*

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen during an active navigation session.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press the search button on the keyboard.
5. Select your destination from the list.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to add a waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Note: *This feature is only available if you properly attach the trailer to your vehicle.*

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the tools button on the bottom corner of the touchscreen.
2. Press the settings button.
3. Press the guidance button.
4. Press Smart Trailer Navigation.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to switch trailer towing navigation on or off.

Vehicle Software Updates

VEHICLE SOFTWARE UPDATES - VEHICLES WITH: DOUBLE LOCKING

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 454).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on the top of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 479).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.

- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Enable double lock.
 - You can re-enable double lock with the key fob after the update completes.
- Arm the alarm.
 - The alarm automatically rearms after the update completes.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

VEHICLE SOFTWARE UPDATES - VEHICLES WITH: SINGLE LOCKING

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 454).

Vehicle Software Updates

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on the top of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 479).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Arm the alarm.
 - The alarm automatically rearms after the update completes.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Vehicle Software Updates

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates on.

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Recurring Schedule**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates when available. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY - TURKEY

Turkey Only

You can find the contact information for all authorized dealers on www.ford.com.tr or www.servis.gov.tr. For more information, you can contact us at 444-3673.

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/ Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/ Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pirsaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenimahalle/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A-B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşadası/Aydın	Aydın

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Ayman Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balikesir	Balikesir
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balikesir	Balikesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balikesir	Balikesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/ Batman	Batman
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No: 380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/ Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/ Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/ Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Mendere Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/ Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/ Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKEN- DERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğlanoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKIT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
GÜRSOY	(232) 464 02 50	Merkez Mah. Gazi Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı Blv. Gürsoy Oto. Gürsoy No: 872 Mezitli/Mersin	İçel
ASF	(216) 427 37 47	Soğanlık Yeni Mah. Soğanlık D-100 Kuzey Yanyol Cad. 30 B/Kartal/İstanbul	İstanbul
ATILGAN SANC- AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc- aktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No: 57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 12 Migros karşısı A.Hisarı/ İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karşıyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/ İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/ İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/ Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs
ACAMAR	(262) 606 10 10	Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/ Kocaeli	Kocaeli
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırlar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No: 102 Merkez/Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/Samsun	Samsun
KURT	(346) 502 58 58	Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultaneşhir Blv. 146 Merkez/Sivas	Sivas
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
VOLKAN Tekirdađ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdađ	Tekirdađ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çift-likköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Eređli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Service Intervals - Turkey

Turkey Only

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All passenger vehicles. • Ranger. • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier. 	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom. 	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All electric vehicles. 	1 year	Unlimited.

Note: *Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.*

Customer Information

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

BATTERY PERFORMANCE AND DURABILITY INFORMATION

The provided electrochemical performance and durability values are in accordance with the EU Battery Regulation 2023/1542 - Article 10.

Details	Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (mHEV)	Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)
Certified usable battery energy (kWh)	N/A	46
Rated capacity (Ah)	8.4	159.2
Capacity fade (%)	35.0	14.2
Power (W)	11000	177300
Power fade (%)	44.0	1.2
Internal resistance (Ω)	0.017	0.045
Internal resistance increase (%)	70	13
Energy round trip efficiency (%); and its fade (%)	98.0; 3.5	97.1; 5.3
Minimum expected lifetime of the battery under reference conditions for which it has been designed (cycles; calendar years)	11680; 8	1000; 8
Battery manufacturer	Bosch, Gerlingen ¹	Ford, Cologne ²
Battery importer	Ford, Cologne ²	N/A

¹ **Bosch, Gerlingen** Robert Bosch GmbH, Robert-Bosch-Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen, Germany, contact@bosch.com

² **Ford, Cologne** Ford-Werke GmbH, Henry-Ford-Str. 1., 50735 Köln, Germany, elveu@ford.com, www.ford.de

Customer Information

Digital Battery Passport



Scan the code or visit <https://battery.dpp.ford> to access information about your hybrid or electric vehicle battery in accordance with EU Battery Regulation 2023/1542.

Note: *The VIN-number of your vehicle is required to access the information.*

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: *To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.*

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

You can locate radio frequency certification labels and declarations of conformity for components on your vehicle at your local Ford or Lincoln website along with your owner information.

For more information scan here:



<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Customer Information

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Customer Information

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What is eCall** (page 53).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a Third Party Service (TPS) system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 53).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 54).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).

Customer Information

- Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.
 - Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
 - Any additional data (if applicable): See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 31).
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

Customer Information

- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.
- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
 - (1) Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
 - (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
 - (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the Ford app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (GDPR) and 2002/58/EC.
 - 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the Ford app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

Customer Information

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the Ford app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the Ford app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

Customer Information

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

Customer Information

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

Customer Information

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Customer Information

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit the TeleNav website from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

<https://www.telenav.com>

Customer Information



1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or

Customer Information

its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the

TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE

Customer Information

POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration,

both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved!"

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria “© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”

Croatia
Cyprus,
Estonia,
Latvia,
Lithuania,
Moldova,
Poland,
Slovenia
and/or
Ukraine

“© EuroGeographics”

France “source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”

Germany “Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”

Great Britain “Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”

Greece “Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”

Hungary “Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”

Italy “La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”

Norway “Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”

Portugal “Source: IgeoE – Portugal”

Spain “Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”

Sweden “Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”

Switzerland “Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited.

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

<https://www.puma.com.au>



AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE

ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

Customer Information

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Customer Information

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Customer Information

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

Customer Information

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page below for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

<https://gracenote.com>



THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency

Customer Information

equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

<https://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions>



1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

<https://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions>



2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

Customer Information

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, pipes or hoses. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.



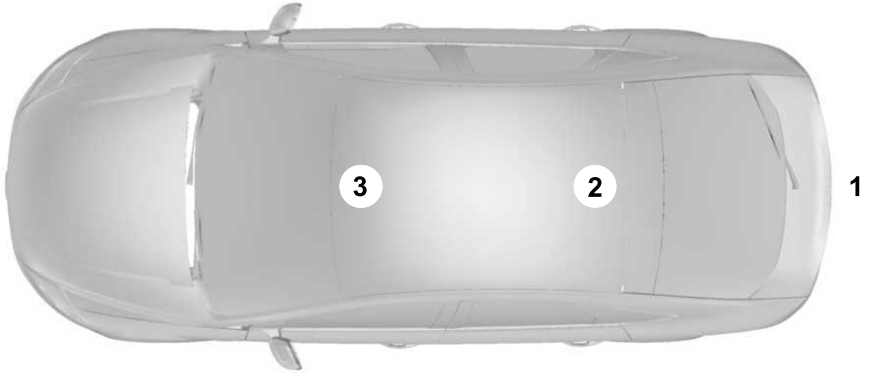
WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth**® connectivity or satellite navigation.

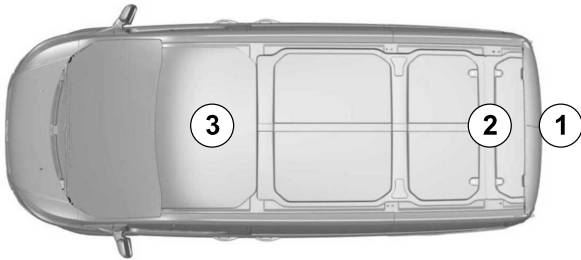
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Appendices

Car

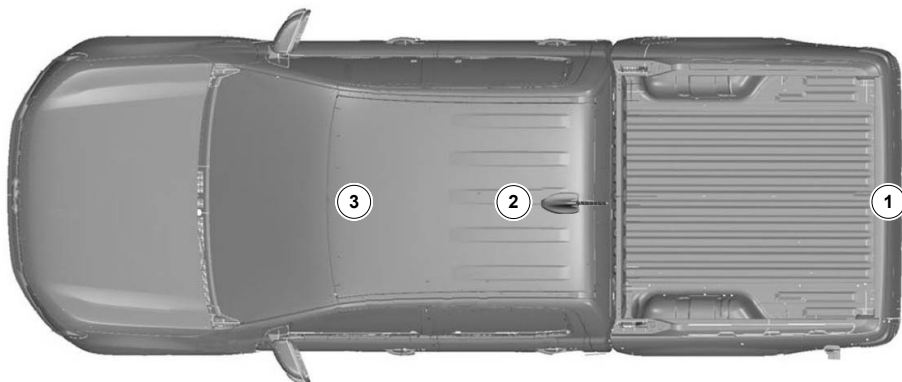


Van



Appendices

Truck



E239121

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30 ¹	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-87	50	2, 3
144-174	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

¹ For battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid vehicles, this frequency is not approved when your vehicle is plugged-in and charging.

Appendices

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Index

1

12V Battery.....	389
12V Battery Precautions.....	389
Battery Management System Limitations.....	390
Changing the 12V Battery.....	391
Charging the 12V Battery.....	392
How Does the Battery Management System Work.....	390
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery.....	392
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	392
What Is the Battery Management System.....	390
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	393
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	393
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	393

3

360 Degree Camera.....	250
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	251
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	250
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	250
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	250
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	251

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	122
About This Publication - Europe.....	17
About This Publication - New Zealand.....	19
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	218
Accessing Navigation.....	474
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	147
Accessing the Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	117
Accessing the Trip Computer - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	117
AC Charging.....	182
Charging at Home.....	182
Charging in Public.....	184

Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord.....	186
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	255
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	275
Lane Centering.....	265
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	270
Predictive Speed Assist.....	272
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	275
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	260
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	260
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	265
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	257
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	256
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Gasoline.....	255
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	275
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	275
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	104
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	99
Adjusting the Map.....	474
Changing the Format of the Map.....	474
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	474
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	47
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	460
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	80
Adjusting the Volume.....	459
Aid Mode.....	291
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	291
What Is Aid Mode.....	291
Airbag Precautions.....	50
Airbags.....	49
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	51
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	51
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	51

Index

Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	51	Apps.....	472
Air Conditioning		Audio System.....	459
See: Climate Control.....	122	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	461
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	406	FM Radio.....	460
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	405	Audio System Precautions.....	459
Alarm		Authorized Dealer Directory - Turkey.....	481
See: Connecting a Trailer.....	334	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	103
Alert and Aid Mode.....	292	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....	103
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	292	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Precautions.....	103
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	292	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	103
Alexa Built-In.....	466	Auto Hold.....	233
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	466	Auto Hold Indicators.....	233
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	466	Autolamps.....	90
Ambient Lighting.....	99	Autolamp Settings.....	90
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	99	What Are Autolamps.....	90
Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....	99	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	349
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	218	Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	349
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	218	Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	349
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77	What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	349
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	78	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	315
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	78	Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	315
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	77	What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	315
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	78	Automatic Engine Stop.....	147
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	77	How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	147
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77	Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	147
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	78	Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	147
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	77	Automatic High Beam Control.....	91
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	78	Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	93
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	78	Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	93
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	79	Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	92
What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	78	Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	92
What Is Ask on Exit.....	78	Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	92
Appendices.....	520	How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	91
Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	224		
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	224		
Applying the Parking Brake.....	222		
App Precautions.....	472		
App Requirements.....	472		

Index

Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	93
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	93
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	205
Automatic Transmission.....	202
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	202
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	206
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	206
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	203
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	202
Drive (D).....	203
Neutral (N).....	203
Park (P).....	202
Reverse (R).....	203
Sport (S).....	203
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	202
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters.....	204
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	206
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	206
Auto Mode.....	124
Auto Mode Indicators.....	124
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	124
Autolock.....	63
How Does Autolock Work.....	63
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	154
Auto-Start-Stop.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop Settings.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	154
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	154
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop Settings.....	153
Setting the Engine Stop Speed.....	153
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	154
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	155
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	154
Autolock.....	62
Autolock Requirements.....	62
Switching Autolock On and Off.....	62
What Is Autolock.....	62
Autowipers.....	83
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	84
Autowipers Settings.....	83
What Are Autowipers.....	83
B	
Battery Charge.....	114
Battery Performance and Durability Information.....	488
Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	465
Blind Spot Assist.....	293
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	294
Blind Spot Assist – Information Messages.....	295
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	293
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	293
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	293
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	295
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	296
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage – Information Messages.....	297
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	295
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	295
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	295
Blind Spot Information System.....	299
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	303
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	302
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	303
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	300

Index

Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle.....	300
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	299
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle.....	300
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	300
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission.....	301
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	303
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	303
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	303
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	302
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	302
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	302
Selecting a Trailer.....	303
Setting a Trailer Length.....	302
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	302
BlueCruise Alerts.....	280
BlueCruise Automatic Cancellation.....	280
BlueCruise.....	276
BlueCruise Indicators.....	281
BlueCruise – Information Messages.....	282
BlueCruise Limitations.....	278
BlueCruise Precautions.....	277
BlueCruise Requirements.....	278
BlueCruise Settings.....	279
Bluetooth®.....	471
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	371
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	371
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	371
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	371
Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	376
Booster Seats.....	44
Brake Coach.....	115
Brake Fluid Specification.....	219
Brake Over Accelerator - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	218
Brake Over Accelerator - Excluding: Battery Electric Vehicle.....	218
Brake Precautions.....	218
Brakes.....	218
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	218
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	220
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	220
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	221
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	220
Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	340
Breaking-In - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	340

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	253
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	285
Catalytic Converter.....	167
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	167
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	167
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	167
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	167
Center Display Limitations.....	463
Center Display Overview.....	463
Center Display Precautions.....	463
Changing a Flat Tire.....	445
Changing a Road Wheel.....	445
Changing the Backup Battery.....	55
Changing the Illuminated Scuff Plate Battery.....	401
Changing the Language.....	116
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	116
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	56
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	285

Index

Changing the Temperature Unit.....	116	Cleaning the Exterior.....	408
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	116	Cleaning Camera Lenses and	
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot		Sensors.....	409
Name or Password.....	457	Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless	
Charge Coupler Manual Release.....	191	Steel.....	408
Charge Port Indicators.....	181	Cleaning Headlamps and Rear	
Charging a Device.....	137	Lamps.....	408
Charging a Wireless Device.....	141	Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	409
Charging Equipment Identification		Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	409
Symbols.....	196	Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	408
Charging Equipment Indicators.....	177	Cleaning the Underbody.....	409
Charging Equipment Overview.....	174	Cleaning Wheels.....	408
Charging Equipment Precautions.....	173	Cleaning Windows and Wiper	
Charging Settings.....	192	Blades.....	408
Charging Your Vehicle.....	173	Cleaning the Interior.....	410
AC Charging.....	182	Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	411
Charging Your Vehicle –		Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	410
Troubleshooting.....	197	Cleaning Fabric.....	410
Charging Your Vehicle –		Cleaning Leather.....	410
Troubleshooting.....	197	Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	412
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked		Cleaning Plastic.....	410
Questions.....	199	Cleaning Seatbelts.....	411
Charging Your Vehicle – Information		Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	411
Messages.....	198	Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	410
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning		Cleaning Vinyl.....	411
Lamps.....	197	Climate Control.....	122
Checking Local Hazard Information		Auto Mode.....	124
Status.....	284	Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric	
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	218	Vehicle.....	126
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	200	Climate Control Hints - Mild Hybrid	
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	424	Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	125
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	85	Closing the Frunk - Battery Electric	
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	39	Vehicle.....	328
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor		Closing the Frunk from Outside Your	
Points.....	39	Vehicle.....	328
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether		Closing the Liftgate.....	70
Anchor Points.....	39	Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	71
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor		Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your	
Points.....	39	Vehicle.....	70
Child Restraints.....	40	Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your	
Child Restraint Position Information.....	40	Vehicle.....	70
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	43	Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote	
Installing Child Restraints.....	44	Control.....	71
Child Safety.....	38	Clutch Fluid Specification.....	201
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	39	Cold Weather Precautions.....	340
Child Restraints.....	40	Configuring the Trip Computer.....	117
Child Safety Locks.....	45	Connected Navigation.....	474
Child Safety Precautions.....	38		

Index

Connected Vehicle.....	454
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	455
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	454
Connected Vehicle Data.....	30
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	454
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	454
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	455
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	455
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	455
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	471
Connecting a Trailer.....	334
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	335
Tow Ball.....	331
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	335
Connecting a Trailer – Information Messages.....	335
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	454
Connecting the Ford App to the Modem.....	454
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	454
What Is the Modem.....	454
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	454
Connecting Your Phone.....	468
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	385
Adding Coolant.....	386
Changing the Coolant.....	387
Checking the Coolant Level.....	385
Coolant – Information Messages.....	389
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	388
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	388
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	387
Coolant - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	382
Adding Coolant.....	382
Changing the Coolant.....	383
Checking the Coolant Level.....	382
Coolant – Information Messages.....	385
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	385
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	384
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	384
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	343
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	349
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	352
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	344
Post-Crash Alert System.....	348
Recovery Towing.....	349
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	457
Cross Traffic Alert.....	307
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	310
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	310
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	309
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	308
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	310
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	310
Cruise Control.....	253
Cruise Control Indicators.....	254
Cup Holders.....	142
Cup Holder Precautions.....	142
Customer Information.....	488
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	114
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	113
D	
Data Privacy.....	28
DC Charging.....	189
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	461
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	461
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	461
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	461
Directing the Flow of Air.....	124
Dog Guard See: Partitioning System.....	326
Door Lock Indicators.....	63

Index

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	62	Driving Economically - Mild Hybrid	
How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor		Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	340
Work.....	62	Driving Hints.....	340
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	63	Electric Vehicle - Battery Electric	
Doors and Locks.....	59	Vehicle.....	341
Autorelock.....	63	Driving Through Shallow Water.....	341
Autounlock.....	62	Drowsiness Monitor	
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	62	See: Driver Alert.....	318
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	63	E	
Mislock.....	62	eCall.....	53
Operating the Doors From Inside Your		eCall – Troubleshooting.....	55
Vehicle.....	61	eCall – Troubleshooting.....	55
Operating the Doors From Outside Your		eCall – Information Messages.....	55
Vehicle.....	59	eCall User Information.....	491
Doors and Locks –		Eco Coach.....	215
Troubleshooting.....	63	Electric Motor Audible Warnings.....	209
Doors and Locks – Information		Electric Motor.....	207
Messages.....	64	Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....	211
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	63	Roll-Away Protection.....	209
Drive Mode Control.....	213	Selector Positions.....	207
Drive Mode Control –		Electric Motor Precautions.....	207
Troubleshooting.....	214	Electric Motor Temperature Gauge.....	111
Drive Modes - Battery Electric		Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....	211
Vehicle.....	214	Electric Motor – Information	
Drive Modes - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle		Messages.....	211
(MHEV).....	213	Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Drive Mode Control –		Warning.....	225
Troubleshooting.....	214	Electric Parking Brake.....	224
Drive Mode Control – Information		Electric Parking Brake –	
Messages.....	214	Troubleshooting.....	225
Drive Modes - Battery Electric		Electric Parking Brake –	
Vehicle.....	214	Troubleshooting.....	225
Eco.....	214	Messages.....	226
Normal.....	214	Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Slippery.....	214	Lamps.....	225
Sport.....	214	Electric Power Steering.....	238
Drive Modes - Mild Hybrid Electric		Electric Power Steering Adaptive	
Vehicle (MHEV).....	213	Steering.....	238
Eco.....	213	Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	238
Normal.....	213	How Does Electric Power Steering	
Slippery.....	213	Work.....	238
Sport.....	213	Electric Vehicle - Battery Electric	
Driver Alert.....	318	Vehicle.....	341
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	320	Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	341
Driver Alert Indicators.....	319	Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	520
Driver Alert Precautions.....	318		
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	320		
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	320		

Index

Emergency Call Indicators.....	54	Exterior Bulbs.....	395
Emergency Call Limitations.....	53	Changing a Mirror Turn Signal Lamp	
Emergency Call Requirements.....	53	Bulb.....	398
Emergency Call System Data.....	31	Changing a Rear Fog Lamp Bulb.....	397
Emergency Equipment.....	358	Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp	
Emergency Towing.....	354	Bulb.....	399
Enabling Apps on an Android		Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb.....	400
Device.....	472	Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	395
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	472	Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	396
Enabling Local Hazard		Exterior Lamps.....	90
Information.....	284	Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	91
Enabling Remote Start.....	120	Switching the Parking Lamps On and	
End User License Agreement.....	494	Off.....	90
Energy Consumption Figures.....	172	Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	91
Energy Consumption Regulations.....	171	Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	90
Engine Coolant Temperature		Exterior Lighting Control.....	88
Gauge.....	111	Exterior Lighting.....	88
Engine Cooling Fan.....	381	Autolamps.....	90
Engine Oil.....	380	Automatic High Beam Control.....	91
Adding Engine Oil.....	380	Exterior Lamps.....	90
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	380	Glare Free High Beam Control.....	94
Engine Oil Capacity and		Headlamps.....	88
Specification.....	381	Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked	
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	380	Questions.....	96
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost		Exterior Mirrors.....	104
(114kW/155PS) (BZ)/1.0L EcoBoost		Exterior Overview - Battery Electric	
(118kW/160PS) (Q0), Mild Hybrid		Vehicle.....	37
Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	403	Exterior Overview - Mild Hybrid Electric	
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost		Vehicle (MHEV).....	36
(92kW/125PS) (B7), Mild Hybrid			
Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	402	F	
Environment.....	32	Fail-Safe Cooling.....	352
Evasive Steering Assist.....	315	Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is	
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	315	Activated.....	352
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and		Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	353
Off.....	316	How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	352
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	315	What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	352
Event Data.....	29	Fan	
Exit Warning.....	305	See: Engine Cooling Fan.....	381
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	306	Fastening and Unfastening the	
Exit Warning Indicators.....	306	Seatbelts.....	46
Exit Warning Limitations.....	305	Flat Tire	
Exit Warning Precautions.....	305	See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	445
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	306	Floor Mats.....	342
Exit Warning – Information		FM Radio.....	460
Messages.....	306	FM Radio Limitations.....	460
		Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	460

Index

Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	105
Forward Collision Warning.....	315
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	315
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	315
Front Parking Aid.....	242
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	243
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	243
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	243
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	242
Front Seat Precautions.....	128
Front Seats.....	128
Heated Seats.....	131
Manual Seats.....	129
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings.....	166
Fuel and Refueling.....	160
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	166
Fuel Quality.....	160
Refueling.....	162
Running Out of Fuel.....	161
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	160
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	166
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	166
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	166
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	165
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	165
Fuel Economy Display.....	114
Fuel Gauge.....	110
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	110
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	110
What Is Distance to Empty.....	110
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	110
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	110
Fuel Quality.....	160
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	160
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	164
Fuse Precautions.....	359
Fuses.....	359
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	371
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	374
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	359
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	374
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	374

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	168
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	169
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions.....	168
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements.....	168
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	169
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	169
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	169
Glare Free High Beam Control.....	94
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators.....	95
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	96
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations.....	95
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions.....	95
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements.....	95
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work.....	94
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control.....	96
Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off.....	95
Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	107
Overriding Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	107
What Is Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	107
Glass Roof.....	106
Glass Roof Bounce-Back.....	107
Global Opening and Closing.....	100
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	101
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	101
Using Global Closing.....	101
Using Global Opening.....	101

Index

What Is Global Opening and Closing.....100
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....420

H	
Headlamps.....88	
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....89	
Headlamp Indicators.....89	
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....88	
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....89	
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....88	
Heated Seats.....131	
Heated Seat Precautions.....131	
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....131	
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....122	
High Voltage Battery.....170	
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....172	
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....170	
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge.....111	
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....172	
High Voltage Battery – Information Messages.....172	
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....172	
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions.....343	
Hill Start Assist.....232	
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....232	
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....232	
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....232	
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....232	
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....376	
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....255	
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....255	
How Does Auto Hold Work.....233	
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....299	
How Does BlueCruise Work.....276	
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....307	
How Does Driver Alert Work.....318	
How Does eCall Work.....53	
How Does Eco Coach Work.....215	
How Does Exit Warning Work.....305	
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....232	
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work.....215	
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work.....312	
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....312	
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....228	
How Does Stability Control Work.....235	
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....250	
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work.....168	
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....287	
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....290	
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....134	
How Does the Speed Limiter Work.....285	
How Does Traction Control Work.....234	
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....321	
How Does Trip Summary Work.....215	
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....324	
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....49	
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....49	
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....50	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....152	
I	
Icon Glossary	
See: Symbols Glossary.....24	
Icons	
See: Symbols Glossary.....24	

Index

Identifying Fuse Types.....	374	Interior Overview - RHD.....	34
Inflating the Tires.....	424	Introduction.....	17
Information On Demand Screen.....	464	J	
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	417	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	344
In-Lane Repositioning.....	282	Jump Starting Precautions.....	344
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	430	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	346
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....	329	Preparing the Vehicle.....	346
Instrument Cluster Display.....	112	K	
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	113	Keyless Entry.....	65
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	112	Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	66
Instrument Cluster.....	108	Keyless Entry Limitations.....	65
Fuel Gauge.....	110	Keyless Entry Settings.....	65
Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	109	Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	66
Instrument Cluster Overview - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	108	Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	66
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	289	Keys and Remote Controls.....	56
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	288	Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	58
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	287	Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	58
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	289	Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	58
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	287	L	
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	289	Lane Centering.....	265
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....	289	How Does Lane Centering Work.....	265
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	286	Lane Centering Alerts.....	269
Interior Bulbs.....	400	Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	269
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	400	Lane Centering Indicators.....	270
Interior Lamp Function.....	98	Lane Centering Limitations.....	267
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	98	Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	270
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	98	Lane Centering Precautions.....	266
Interior Lighting.....	98	Lane Centering Requirements.....	267
Ambient Lighting.....	99	Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	268
Interior Lamp Function.....	98	Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	270
Interior Mirror.....	103	Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	270
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	103	Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	292
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	103	Lane Keeping System.....	290
Interior Overview - LHD.....	33	Aid Mode.....	291
		Alert and Aid Mode.....	292

Index

Blind Spot Assist.....	293
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	295
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	298
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	290
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	290
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	291
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	298
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	298
Liftgate.....	67
Closing the Liftgate.....	70
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	73
Opening the Liftgate.....	67
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	72
Liftgate Precautions.....	67
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	73
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	74
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	73
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	73
Load Carrying.....	326
Roof Rack.....	326
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	327
Load Carrying Precautions.....	326
Loading Your Trailer.....	337
Load Retention Net See: Partitioning System.....	326
Local Hazard Information.....	284
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	284
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	250
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	301
Locating the Charge Port.....	180
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	309
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	306
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	161
Locating the Power Outlets.....	139
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	314
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors – Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	313
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	246
Locating the Tire label.....	417
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit – Battery Electric Vehicle.....	432
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit – Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	432
Locating the USB Ports.....	137
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	140
Locating Your Vehicle.....	56
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	102
Locking the Steering Wheel – LHD.....	81
Locking the Steering Wheel – RHD.....	81
Locking the Steering Wheel – Vehicles Built Up To: 25-05-2026.....	80
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	330
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	330
Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions.....	330
Luggage Compartment.....	328
Closing the Frunk – Battery Electric Vehicle.....	328
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	330
Opening the Frunk – Battery Electric Vehicle.....	328
Luggage Compartment Precautions.....	328

M

Maintenance.....	376
12V Battery.....	389
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	393
Coolant – Battery Electric Vehicle.....	385
Coolant – Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	382
Engine Oil.....	380
Exterior Bulbs.....	395
Interior Bulbs.....	400
Maintenance Precautions.....	376

Index

Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	469
Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	53
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	225
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With Paddle Shifters.....	204
Manual Seats.....	129
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	129
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	130
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	130
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	130
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	132
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	129
Removing the Head Restraint.....	129
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	133
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	200
Manual Transmission.....	200
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	201
Manual Transmission Precautions.....	200
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	200
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	201
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions.....	201
Media Control Buttons.....	459
Mislock.....	62
Mislock Limitations.....	63
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	63
What Is Mislock.....	62
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	490
Mobile Device Data.....	30
Moonroof	
See: Glass Roof.....	106
Muting the Audio.....	460
N	
Navigation Map Updates.....	474
Navigation.....	474
Adjusting the Map.....	474
Route Guidance.....	475
Setting a Destination.....	474
Waypoints.....	475
O	
One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	217
One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	217
One Pedal Drive.....	217
One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	217
Opening and Closing the Glass Roof.....	106
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	376
Opening and Closing the Sunshade.....	106
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	100
Opening the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	328
Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	328
Opening the Liftgate.....	67
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	68
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	67
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	68
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	68
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	61
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	61
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	59
Double Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	60
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	60
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	61
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	59
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	59

Index

OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	478
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Double Locking.....	477
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Single Locking.....	477
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	229
Overriding the Set Speed.....	265
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	478
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	478
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Double Locking.....	477
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Double Locking.....	477
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Single Locking.....	477
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Single Locking.....	477
P	
Panorama Roof	
See: Glass Roof.....	106
Panoramic Roof	
See: Glass Roof.....	106
Parking Aid Indicators - Vehicles With:	
360 Degree Camera.....	244
Parking Aid Indicators - Vehicles	
Without: Parking Aid Camera.....	244
Parking Aid Precautions.....	241
Parking Aids.....	241
Front Parking Aid.....	242
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	245
Rear Parking Aid.....	242
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	245
Parking Aids – Information	
Messages.....	245
Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	222
Parking Brake.....	222
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	222
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	222
Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	222
Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	222
Partitioning System.....	326
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....	51
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	77
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	77
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	77
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft	
System.....	77
Pedestrian Alert System.....	52
Pedestrian Alert System –	
Troubleshooting.....	52
Pedestrian Alert System –	
Troubleshooting.....	52
Pedestrian Alert System – Information	
Messages.....	52
Performing a System Reset.....	480
Personalized Settings.....	116
Phone Menu.....	468
Phone.....	468
Phone Precautions.....	468
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	471
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	137
Post-Collision Braking.....	348
Post-Crash Alert System.....	348
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System	
Work.....	348
Post-Crash Alert System	
Limitations.....	348
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System	
Off.....	348
What Is the Post-Crash Alert	
System.....	348
Power Gauge.....	109
Powering Off.....	150
Power Outlet.....	139
Power Outlet Precautions.....	139
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	478
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Double Locking.....	477
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Single Locking.....	477
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	313
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	313
Pre-Collision Assist.....	312
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	315
Evasive Steering Assist.....	315
Forward Collision Warning.....	315
Pre-Collision Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	316

Index

Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	316
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	316
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	316
Predictive Speed Assist.....	272
How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work.....	272
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	273
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	273
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	273
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	272
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off.....	273
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	275
Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages.....	275
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	414
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	413
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery.....	170
Programming the Remote Control.....	58
Protecting the Environment.....	32
Puncture See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	445
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	144
R	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	489
REACH.....	489
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	136
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	135
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	134
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	134
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	134
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	135
Rear Parking Aid.....	242
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	242
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	242
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	242
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	242
Rear Seats.....	132
Manual Seats.....	132
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	246
Rear View Camera Limitations.....	246
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	246
Rear View Camera.....	246
Rear View Camera Settings.....	247
Rear View Camera Settings.....	247
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	249
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off.....	248
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	247
Rebooting the Center Display.....	464
Recovery Towing.....	349
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	349
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	350
Installing the Towing Eye.....	350
Locating the Towing Eye.....	350
Recycling and Disposing Labels.....	32
Recycling and Disposing of Batteries.....	32
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery.....	171
Refueling.....	162
Refueling System Overview.....	162
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	162
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	225
Releasing the Parking Brake.....	222
Remote Control Limitations.....	56
Remote Start.....	119
Remote Start Settings.....	120
Removing the Key Blade.....	56
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	416
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	415
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	412

Index

Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	489
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	58
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	85
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	85
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	61
Resetting the Individual Trip Values.....	117
Resetting the Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	117
Resetting the Trip Computer - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	117
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	443
Restarting the Engine.....	154
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off.....	151
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	285
Resuming the Set Speed.....	254
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	263
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	263
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	229
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	228
Reverse Brake Assist.....	228
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	230
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	230
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	231
Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages.....	230
Reverse Wipe.....	84
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	84
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	84
Roll-Away Protection.....	209
How Does Roll-Away Protection Work.....	209
Roll-Away Protection Limitations.....	209
Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and Off.....	209
Roof Rack.....	326
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	327
Roof Rack Precautions.....	326
Route Guidance.....	475
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	475
Canceling Route Guidance.....	475
Repeating an Instruction.....	475
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	340
See: Breaking-In - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	340
Running Out of Fuel.....	161
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	161
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	161

S

Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	460
Seatbelt Precautions.....	46
Seatbelt Reminder.....	47
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	47
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	47
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	47
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	47
Seatbelts.....	46
Seatbelt Reminder.....	47
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	48
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	48
Seatbelts – Information Messages.....	48
Security.....	77
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	77
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	78
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	77
Security – Troubleshooting.....	79
Security – Troubleshooting.....	79
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	79
Security – Information Messages.....	79
Selecting a Drive Mode - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	213
Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST.....	213
Selecting a Drive Mode - ST.....	213
Selecting a Menu Item.....	460
Selecting the Audio Source.....	459
Selector Position Indicators.....	208

Index

Selector Positions.....	207	Software Update Settings.....	478
Drive (D).....	208	Software Update	
Low (L).....	208	See: Software Update Settings.....	478
Neutral (N).....	207	See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
Park (P).....	207	With: Double Locking.....	477
Reverse (R).....	207	See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
Service Data.....	29	With: Single Locking.....	477
Service Intervals.....	487	Special Notices - Turkey.....	22
Service Intervals - Turkey.....	487	Speed Control	
Setting a Destination.....	474	See: Cruise Control.....	253
Setting a Destination Using a Point of		Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	286
Interest.....	475	Speed Limiter Indicators.....	286
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive		Speed Limiter Precautions.....	285
Destination.....	475	Speed Limiter.....	285
Setting a Destination Using a Recent		Speedometer.....	110
Destination.....	475	Stability Control Indicator.....	236
Setting a Destination Using a Saved		Stability Control.....	235
Destination.....	475	Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....	236
Setting a Destination Using the Map		Stability Control –	
Screen.....	474	Troubleshooting.....	236
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry		Stability Control – Information	
Screen.....	474	Messages.....	237
Setting a Memory Preset.....	460	Stability Control – Warning Lamps.....	236
Settings Data.....	30	Starting and Powering Off	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Precautions.....	150
Gap.....	262	Starting and Powering Off.....	150
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Starting and Powering Off –	
Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise		Troubleshooting.....	151
Control.....	260	Starting and Powering Off –	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Troubleshooting.....	151
Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise		Starting and Powering Off – Frequently	
Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive		Asked Questions.....	151
Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	261	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	123	Precautions.....	144
Setting the Clock and Date.....	460	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	144
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	253	Automatic Engine Stop.....	147
Setting the Liftgate Opening		Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Height.....	69	Troubleshooting.....	147
Setting the Speed Limit.....	285	Starting the Engine.....	145
Setting the Temperature.....	124	Stopping the Engine.....	145
Setting the Wake Word.....	465	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Shifting Into Reverse.....	200	Troubleshooting.....	147
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of		Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Park (P).....	205	Frequently Asked Questions.....	149
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	208	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Signing In to Your Account.....	466	Information Messages.....	148
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	128	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Software Update Indicators.....	479	Warning Lamps.....	147

Index

Starting the Engine.....	145	Switching Android Auto™ On and Off.....	473
Restarting the Engine After Stopping It.....	145	Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	472
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	145	Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	233
Starting the Vehicle.....	150	Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - Excluding: ST.....	156
Status Bar.....	463	Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off - ST.....	156
Steering.....	238	Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	153
Electric Power Steering.....	238	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	301
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	239	Switching BlueCruise On and Off.....	279
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	239	Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	122
Steering – Frequently Asked Questions.....	240	Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	309
Steering – Information Messages.....	239	Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	253
Steering – Warning Lamps.....	239	Switching Defrost On and Off.....	122
Steering Wheel.....	80	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	319
Stopping the Engine.....	153	Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....	306
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	146	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	265
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	145	Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	289
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	72	Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission.....	232
Storage.....	142	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	123
Cup Holders.....	142	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	122
Under Floor Storage.....	142	Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off.....	217
Storing a First Aid Kit - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	358	Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles With: 360 Degree Camera.....	241
Storing a First Aid Kit - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	358	Switching Parking Aid On and Off - Vehicles With: Digital Rear View Camera.....	242
Storing a Warning Triangle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	358	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	122
Storing a Warning Triangle - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	358	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	229
Storing Your Vehicle.....	413	Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST.....	236
Sunroof			
See: Glass Roof.....	106		
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	259		
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	259		
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	122		
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	98		

Index

Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST.....	236
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	470
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	252
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	251
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	252
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	459
Switching the Display On and Off.....	461
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off.....	123
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	98
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	344
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	124
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	123
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	82
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	81
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	123
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	287
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	291
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	291
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	51
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off.....	69
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	98
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	84
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off.....	285
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	234
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	324
Symbols Glossary.....	24
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	24
System Update See: Software Update Settings.....	478
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	477
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	477
T	
Tachometer.....	109
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	488
Tire Care.....	424
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	442
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	442
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	443
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Troubleshooting.....	443
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Information Messages.....	444
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps.....	443
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle, Excluding: ST.....	426
Tire Pressure Specifications - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Excluding: ST.....	424
Tire Pressure Specifications - ST.....	428
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	421
Tire Rotation.....	430
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built From: 08/2026.....	433
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components - Vehicles Built Up To: 07/2026.....	433

Index

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Precautions.....	432
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	432
Tow Ball.....	331
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	333
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	332
Tow Ball Components.....	332
Tow Ball Precautions.....	331
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	327
Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities.....	327
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Battery	
Electric Vehicle.....	336
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Mild Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	336
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	336
Towing a Trailer.....	336
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	337
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	337
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	338
Towing Weight Capacities.....	337
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	354
Towing Your Vehicle.....	354
Track Use Precautions.....	407
Track Use.....	407
Traction Control Indicator.....	234
Traction Control.....	234
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	234
Traction Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	234
Traction Control – Information	
Messages.....	234
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	234
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....	322
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Limitations.....	321
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Precautions.....	321
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....	322
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	321
Trailer Towing Hints.....	337
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	476
Transporting the Vehicle.....	351
Trip Computer.....	117
Trip Data - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	118
Trip Data - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(MHEV).....	118
Trip Summary.....	115

Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Battery	
Electric Vehicle, Excluding: ST.....	426
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Mild Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Excluding:	
ST.....	424
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - ST.....	428

U

Under Floor Storage.....	142
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment	
Floor.....	142
Locating the Luggage Compartment Under	
Floor Storage.....	142
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	359
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	359
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood	
Fuse Box.....	360
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	359
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric	
Vehicle, LHD.....	379
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric	
Vehicle, RHD.....	379
Under Hood Overview - Mild Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (MHEV), LHD.....	377
Under Hood Overview - Mild Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (MHEV), RHD.....	378
USB Ports.....	137
Using Alexa Built-In.....	466
Using Auto Hold.....	233
Using Keyless Entry.....	65
Using Remote Start - Battery Electric	
Vehicle.....	119
Using Remote Start - Mild Hybrid Electric	
Vehicle (MHEV).....	119
Using Snow Chains.....	422
Using Summer Tires.....	422
Using the Instrument Cluster Display	
Controls.....	112
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit -	
Vehicles Built From: 08/2026.....	438
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit -	
Vehicles Built Up To: 07/2026.....	434
Using This Publication.....	21
Using Winter Tires.....	422
Using Your Vehicle App and	
Charging.....	196

Index

V

Vehicle Care.....	408
Cleaning the Exterior.....	408
Cleaning the Interior.....	410
Vehicle Charging Status.....	115
Vehicle Dimensions.....	404
Vehicle Identification Number.....	452
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	452
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	452
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....	452
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	452
Vehicle Identification.....	452
Vehicle Identification Number.....	452
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	452
Vehicle Range Display.....	110
Vehicle Software Updates.....	477
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	477
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	477
Vehicle Specifications.....	402
Vehicle System Reset.....	480
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	458
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	458
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	457
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	458
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	122
Venting the Glass Roof.....	106
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level.....	215
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	442
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	216
Visual Search.....	33
Voice Interaction Examples.....	465
Voice Interaction.....	465

W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....	21
---	----

Washers.....	86
Adding Washer Fluid.....	86
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	86
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	86
Using the Windshield Washer.....	86
Washer Fluid Specification.....	86
Washer Precautions.....	86
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	83
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	412
Waypoints.....	475
Adding a Waypoint.....	475
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	111
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	111
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	454
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	466
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	153
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	299
What Is BlueCruise.....	276
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	307
What Is Cruise Control.....	253
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	213
What Is Driver Alert.....	318
What Is eCall.....	53
What Is Eco Coach.....	215
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	232
What Is Keyless Entry.....	65
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	284
What Is One Pedal Drive.....	217
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	312
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	228
What Is Stability Control.....	235
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	167
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	224
What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	168
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	170
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	287
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	290
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	52
What Is the Power Outlet.....	139

Index

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	134
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	246
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	442
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	432
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	140
What Is Traction Control.....	234
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	321
What is Voice Interaction.....	465
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	324
Wheel and Tire Information.....	417
Wheel Nuts.....	450
Wi Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	457
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	454
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	457
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	457
Window Bounce-Back.....	101
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	101
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	102
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	101
Windows.....	100
Global Opening and Closing.....	100
Window Bounce-Back.....	101
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	87
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	87
Wipers and Washers.....	83
Autowipers.....	83
Reverse Wipe.....	84
Washers.....	86
Wipers.....	83
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	87
Wipers.....	83
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	83
Wiper Precautions.....	83
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	140
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	140
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	324
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	324
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	325
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....	325
Wrong Way Alert.....	324
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	325

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....	481
-----------------------------	-----

